

Probability

Lecture Notes

Adolfo J. Rumbos

© *Draft date: April 28, 2020*

April 28, 2020

Contents

1	Preface	5
2	Introduction: An example from statistical inference	7
3	Probability Spaces	11
3.1	Sample Spaces and σ -fields	11
3.2	Some Set Algebra	13
3.3	More on σ -fields	16
3.4	Defining a Probability Function	20
3.4.1	Properties of Probability Spaces	20
3.4.2	Constructing Probability Functions	28
3.5	Independent Events	30
3.6	Conditional Probability	32
3.6.1	Some Properties of Conditional Probabilities	34
4	Random Variables	39
4.1	Definition of Random Variable	39
4.2	Distribution Functions	40
5	Expectation of Random Variables	53
5.1	Expected Value of a Random Variable	53
5.2	Properties of Expectations	65
5.2.1	Linearity	65
5.2.2	Expectations of Functions of Random Variables	66
5.3	Moments	68
5.3.1	Moment Generating Function	69
5.3.2	Properties of Moment Generating Functions	71
5.4	Variance	75
6	Joint Distributions	77
6.1	Definition of Joint Distribution	77
6.2	Marginal Distributions	81
6.3	Independent Random Variables	84

7	Some Special Distributions	97
7.1	The Normal Distribution	97
7.2	The Poisson Distribution	102
8	Convergence in Distribution	107
8.1	Definition of Convergence in Distribution	107
8.2	mgf Convergence Theorem	108
8.3	Central Limit Theorem	116
9	Introduction to Estimation	121
9.1	Point Estimation	121
9.2	Estimating the Mean	123
9.3	Estimating Proportions	128
9.4	Interval Estimates for the Mean	130
9.4.1	The χ^2 Distribution	131
9.4.2	The t Distribution	139
9.4.3	Sampling from a normal distribution	142
9.4.4	Distribution of the Sample Variance from a Normal Dis- tribution	146
9.4.5	The Distribution of T_n	153

Chapter 1

Preface

This set of notes has been developed in conjunction with the teaching of Probability at Pomona College over the course of many semesters. The main goal of the course has been to introduce the theory and practice of Probability in the context of problems in statistical inference. Many of the students in the course will take a statistical inference course in a subsequent semester and will get to put into practice the theory and techniques developed in the course. For the rest of the students, the course is a solid introduction to Probability, which begins with the fundamental definitions of sample spaces, probability, random variables, distribution functions, and culminates with the celebrated Central Limit Theorem and its applications. This course also serves as an introduction to probabilistic modeling and presents good preparation for subsequent courses in mathematical modeling and stochastic processes.

Chapter 2

Introduction: An example from statistical inference

I had two coins: a trick coin and a fair one. The fair coin has an equal chance of landing heads and tails after being tossed. The trick coin is rigged so that 40% of the time it comes up head. I lost one of the coins, and I don't know whether the coin I have left is the trick coin, or the fair one. How do I determine whether I have the trick coin or the fair coin?

I believe that I have the trick coin, which has a probability of landing heads 40% of the time, $p = 0.40$. We can run an experiment to determine whether my belief is correct. For instance, we can toss the coin many times and determine the proportion of the tosses that the coin comes up head. If that proportion is very far off from 0.40, we might be led to believe that the coin is perhaps the fair one. If the outcome is in a neighborhood of 0.40, we might conclude that the my belief that I have the trick is correct. However, in the event that the coin that I have is actually the fair coin, there is the possibility that the outcome of the experiment might be close to 0.40. Thus, an outcome close to 0.40 should not be enough to give validity to my belief that I have the trick coin. We therefore need a way to evaluate a given outcome of the experiment in light of the assumption that the coin that we have is of one of the two types; that is, under the assumption that the coin is the fair coin or the trick one. We will next describe how this evaluation procedure can be set up.

Decision \ Coin Type	Trick	fair
	Have Trick Coin	(1)
Have Fair Coin	(3)	(4)

Table 2.1: Which Coin do I have?

First, we set a decision criterion; this can be done before the experiment is

performed. For instance, suppose the experiment consists of tossing the coin 100 times and determining the number of heads, N_H , in the 100 tosses. If $35 \leq N_H \leq 45$ then I will conclude that I have the trick coin, otherwise I have the fair coin.

There are four scenarios that may happen, and these are illustrated in Table 2.1. The first column shows the two possible decisions we can make: either we have the trick coin, or we have the fair coin. Depending on the actual state of affairs, illustrated on the first row of the table (we actually have the trick coin or the fair coin), our decision might be in error. For instance, in scenarios (2) or (3) our decisions would lead to errors (Why?). What are the chances of that happening? In this course we'll learn how to compute a measure of the likelihood of outcomes (1) through (4) in Table 2.1. This notion of “measure of likelihood” is what is known as a *probability function*. It is a function that assigns a number between 0 and 1 (or 0% to 100%) to sets of outcomes of an experiment.

Once a measure of the likelihood of making an error in a decision is obtained, the next step is to minimize the probability of making the error. For instance, suppose that we actually have the fair coin. Based on this assumption, we can compute the probability that N_H lies between 35 and 45. We will see how to do this later in the course. This would correspond to computing the probability of outcome (2) in Table 2.1. We get

$$\text{Probability of (2)} = \text{Prob}(35 \leq N_H \leq 45, \text{ given that } p = 0.5) \approx 18.3\%.$$

Thus, if we have the fair coin, and decide, according to our decision criterion, that we have the trick coin, then there is an 18.3% chance that we make a mistake.

Alternatively, if we have the trick coin, we could make the wrong decision if either $N_H > 45$ or $N_H < 35$. This corresponds to scenario (3) in Table 2.1. In this case we obtain

$$\text{Probability of (3)} = \text{Prob}(N_H < 35 \text{ or } N_H > 45, \text{ given that } p = 0.4) = 26.1\%.$$

Thus, we see that the chances of making the wrong decision are rather high. In order to bring those numbers down, we can modify the experiment in two ways:

- Increase the number of tosses
- Change the decision criterion

Example 2.0.1 (Increasing the number of tosses). Suppose we toss the coin 500 times. In this case, we will say that we have the trick coin if $175 \leq N_H \leq 225$ (why?). If we have the fair coin, then the probability of making the wrong decision is

$$\text{Probability of (2)} = \text{Prob}(175 \leq N_H \leq 225, \text{ given that } p = 0.5) \approx 1.4\%.$$

If we actually have the trick coin, the the probability of making the wrong decision is scenario (3) in Table 2.1. In this case,

$$\text{Probability of (3)} = \text{Prob}(N_H < 175 \text{ or } N_H > 225, \text{ given that } p = 0.4),$$

which is approximately 2.0%.

Note that in this case, the probabilities of making an error are drastically reduced from those in the 100 tosses experiment. Thus, we would be more confident in our conclusions based on our decision criterion. However, it is important to keep in mind that there is a chance, albeit small, of reaching the wrong conclusion.

Example 2.0.2 (Change the decision criterion). Toss the coin 100 times and suppose that we say that we have the trick coin if $37 \leq N_H \leq 43$; in other words, we choose a narrower decision criterion.

In this case,

$$\text{Probability of (2)} = \text{Prob}(37 \leq N_H \leq 43, \text{ given that } p = 0.5) \approx 9.3\%$$

and

$$\text{Probability of (3)} = \text{Prob}(N_H < 37 \text{ or } N_H > 43, \text{ given that } p = 0.4) \approx 47.5\%.$$

Observe that, in this case, the probability of making an error if we actually have the fair coin is decreased in the case of the 100 tosses experiment; however, if we do have the trick coin, then the probability of making an error is increased from that of the original setup.

Our first goal in this course is to define the notion of probability that allowed us to make the calculations presented in this example. Although we will continue to use the coin-tossing experiment as an example to illustrate various concepts and calculations that will be introduced, the notion of probability that we will develop will extend beyond the coin-tossing example presented in this section. Before we give a precise definition of a probability function, we will first need to develop the notion of a *Probability Space*.

Chapter 3

Probability Spaces

3.1 Sample Spaces and σ -fields

In this section we discuss a class of objects for which a probability function can be defined; these are called events. Events are sets of outcomes of random experiments. We shall then begin with the definition of a random experiment. The set of all possible outcomes of random experiment is called the sample space for the experiment; this will be the starting point from which we will build a theory of probability.

A *random experiment* is a process or observation that can be repeated indefinitely under the same conditions, and whose outcomes cannot be predicted with certainty before the experiment is performed. For instance, if a coin is flipped 100 times, the number of heads that come up cannot be determined with certainty. The set of all possible outcomes of a random experiment is called the *sample space* of the experiment. In the case of 100 tosses of a coin, the sample spaces is the set of all possible sequences of Heads (H) and Tails (T) of length 100:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} H & H & H & H & \dots & H \\ T & H & H & H & \dots & H \\ H & T & H & H & \dots & H \\ \vdots & & & & & \end{array}$$

Events are subsets of the sample space for which we can compute probabilities. If we denote the sample space for an experiment by \mathcal{C} , a subset, E , of \mathcal{C} , denoted

$$E \subseteq \mathcal{C},$$

is a collection of outcomes in \mathcal{C} . For example, in the 100-coin-toss experiment, if we denote the number of heads in an outcome by N_H ; then the set of outcomes for which $35 \leq N_H \leq 45$ is a subset of \mathcal{C} . We will denote this set by $(35 \leq N_H \leq 45)$, so that

$$(35 \leq N_H \leq 45) \subseteq \mathcal{C},$$

the set of sequences of H and T that have between 35 and 45 heads.

Events are a special class of subsets of a sample space \mathcal{C} . These subsets satisfy a set of axioms known as the axioms of a σ -algebra, or the σ -field axioms.

Definition 3.1.1 (σ -field). A collection of subsets, \mathcal{B} , of a sample space \mathcal{C} , referred to as events, is called a σ -field if it satisfies the following properties:

1. $\emptyset \in \mathcal{B}$ (\emptyset denotes the empty set, or the set with no elements).
2. If $E \in \mathcal{B}$, then its complement, E^c (the set of outcomes in the sample space that are not in E) is also an element of \mathcal{B} ; in symbols, we write

$$E \in \mathcal{B} \Rightarrow E^c \in \mathcal{B}.$$

3. If $(E_1, E_2, E_3 \dots)$ is a sequence of events, then the union of the events is also in \mathcal{B} ; in symbols,

$$E_k \in \mathcal{B} \text{ for } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \Rightarrow E_1 \cup E_2 \cup E_3 \cup \dots = \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \in \mathcal{B},$$

where $\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$ denotes the collection of outcomes in the sample space that belong to at least one of the events E_k , for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

Example 3.1.2. Toss a coin three times in a row. The sample space, \mathcal{C} , for this experiment consists of all triples of heads (H) and tails (T):

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} HHH \\ HHT \\ HTH \\ HTT \\ THH \\ THT \\ TTH \\ TTT \end{array} \right\} \text{Sample Space}$$

An example of a σ -field for this sample space consists of all possible subsets of the sample space. There are $2^8 = 256$ possible subsets of this sample space; these include the empty set \emptyset and the entire sample space \mathcal{C} .

An example of an event, E , is the the set of outcomes that yield at least one head:

$$E = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH\}.$$

Its complement, E^c , is also an event:

$$E^c = \{TTT\}.$$

3.2 Some Set Algebra

Since a σ -field consists of a collection of sets satisfying certain properties, before we proceed with our study of σ -fields, we need to understand some notions from set theory.

Sets are collections of objects called elements. If A denotes a set, and a is an element of that set, we write $a \in A$.

Example 3.2.1. The sample space, \mathcal{C} , of all outcomes of tossing a coin three times in a row is a set. The outcome HTH is an element of \mathcal{C} ; that is, $HTH \in \mathcal{C}$.

If A and B are sets, and all elements in A are also elements of B , we say that A is a subset of B and we write $A \subseteq B$. In symbols,

$$A \subseteq B \text{ if and only if } x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B.$$

Example 3.2.2. Let \mathcal{C} denote the set of all possible outcomes of three consecutive tosses of a coin. Let E denote the event that exactly one of the tosses yields a head; that is,

$$E = \{HTT, THT, TTH\};$$

then, $E \subseteq \mathcal{C}$.

Two sets A and B are said to be equal if and only if all elements in A are also elements of B , and vice versa; i.e., $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$. In symbols,

$$A = B \text{ if and only if } A \subseteq B \text{ and } B \subseteq A.$$

Let E be a subset of a sample space \mathcal{C} . The complement of E , denoted E^c , is the set of elements of \mathcal{C} which are not elements of E . We write,

$$E^c = \{x \in \mathcal{C} \mid x \notin E\}.$$

Example 3.2.3. If E is the set of sequences of three tosses of a coin that yield exactly one head, then

$$E^c = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, TTT\};$$

that is, E^c is the event of seeing two or more heads, or no heads in three consecutive tosses of a coin.

If A and B are sets, then the set which contains all elements that are contained in either A or in B is called the union of A and B . This union is denoted by $A \cup B$. In symbols,

$$A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}.$$

Example 3.2.4. Let A denote the event of seeing exactly one head in three consecutive tosses of a coin, and let B be the event of seeing exactly one tail in three consecutive tosses. Then,

$$A = \{HTT, THT, TTH\},$$

$$B = \{THH, HTH, HHT\},$$

and

$$A \cup B = \{HTT, THT, TTH, THH, HTH, HHT\}.$$

Notice that $(A \cup B)^c = \{HHH, TTT\}$, i.e., $(A \cup B)^c$ is the set of sequences of three tosses that yield either heads or tails three times in a row.

If A and B are sets then the intersection of A and B , denoted $A \cap B$, is the collection of elements that belong to both A and B . We write,

$$A \cap B = \{x \mid x \in A \ \& \ x \in B\}.$$

Alternatively,

$$A \cap B = \{x \in A \mid x \in B\}$$

and

$$A \cap B = \{x \in B \mid x \in A\}.$$

We then see that

$$A \cap B \subseteq A \text{ and } A \cap B \subseteq B.$$

Example 3.2.5. Let A and B be as in the previous example (see Example 3.2.4). Then, $A \cap B = \emptyset$, the empty set, i.e., A and B have no elements in common.

Definition 3.2.6. If A and B are sets, and $A \cap B = \emptyset$, we can say that A and B are disjoint.

Proposition 3.2.7 (De Morgan's Laws). *Let A and B be sets.*

$$(i) \ (A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c$$

$$(ii) \ (A \cup B)^c = A^c \cap B^c$$

Proof of (i). Let $x \in (A \cap B)^c$. Then $x \notin A \cap B$. Thus, either $x \notin A$ or $x \notin B$; that is, $x \in A^c$ or $x \in B^c$. It then follows that $x \in A^c \cup B^c$. Consequently,

$$(A \cap B)^c \subseteq A^c \cup B^c. \tag{3.1}$$

Conversely, if $x \in A^c \cup B^c$, then $x \in A^c$ or $x \in B^c$. Thus, either $x \notin A$ or $x \notin B$; which shows that $x \notin A \cap B$; that is, $x \in (A \cap B)^c$. Hence,

$$A^c \cup B^c \subseteq (A \cap B)^c. \tag{3.2}$$

It therefore follows from (3.1) and (3.2) that

$$(A \cap B)^c = A^c \cup B^c.$$

□

Example 3.2.8. Let A and B be as in Example 3.2.4. Then $(A \cap B)^c = \emptyset^c = \mathcal{C}$. On the other hand,

$$A^c = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, TTT\},$$

and

$$B^c = \{HHH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}.$$

Thus $A^c \cup B^c = \mathcal{C}$. Observe that

$$A^c \cap B^c = \{HHH, TTT\}.$$

We can define unions and intersections of many (even infinitely many) sets. For example, if E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots is a sequence of sets, then

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \{x \mid x \text{ is in at least one of the sets in the sequence}\}$$

and

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \{x \mid x \text{ is in all of the sets in the sequence}\}.$$

Example 3.2.9. Let $E_k = \left\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid 0 \leq x < \frac{1}{k}\right\}$ for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$; then,

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = [0, 1) \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \{0\}. \quad (3.3)$$

Solution: To see why the first assertion in (3.3) is true, first note that $E_1 = [0, 1)$. Also, observe that

$$E_k \subseteq E_1, \quad \text{for all } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

It then follows that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \subseteq [0, 1). \quad (3.4)$$

On the other hand, since

$$E_1 \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k,$$

it follows that

$$[0, 1) \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k. \quad (3.5)$$

Combining the inclusions in (3.4) and (3.5) then yields

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = [0, 1),$$

which was to be shown.

To establish the second statement in (3.3), first notice that, if $x \in \bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$, then $x \in E_k$ for all k ; so that

$$0 \leq x < \frac{1}{k}, \quad \text{for all } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (3.6)$$

Now, since $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k} = 0$, it follows from (3.6) and the Squeeze Lemma that $x = 0$. Consequently,

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \{0\},$$

which was to be shown. \square

Finally, if A and B are sets, then $A \setminus B$ denotes the set of elements in A which are not in B ; we write

$$A \setminus B = \{x \in A \mid x \notin B\}$$

Example 3.2.10. Let E be an event in a sample space \mathcal{C} . Then, $\mathcal{C} \setminus E = E^c$.

Example 3.2.11. Let A and B be sets. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} x \in A \setminus B &\iff x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B \\ &\iff x \in A \text{ and } x \in B^c \\ &\iff x \in A \cap B^c \end{aligned}$$

Thus $A \setminus B = A \cap B^c$.

3.3 More on σ -fields

In this section we explore properties of σ -fields and present some examples. We begin with a few consequences of the axioms defining a σ -field in Definition 3.1.1.

Proposition 3.3.1. Let \mathcal{C} be a sample space and \mathcal{B} be a σ -field of subsets of \mathcal{C} .

(a) If $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n \in \mathcal{B}$, then

$$E_1 \cup E_2 \cup \dots \cup E_n \in \mathcal{B}.$$

(b) If $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n \in \mathcal{B}$, then

$$E_1 \cap E_2 \cap \dots \cap E_n \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Proof of (a): Let $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n \in \mathcal{B}$ and define

$$E_{n+1} = \emptyset, E_{n+2} = \emptyset, E_{n+3} = \emptyset, \dots$$

Then, by virtue of Axiom 1 in Definition 3.1.1 we can apply Axiom 3 to obtain that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \in \mathcal{B},$$

where

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = E_1 \cup E_2 \cup E_3 \cup \dots \cup E_n,$$

as a consequence of the result in part (b) of Problem 1 in Assignment #1. \square

Proof of (b): Let $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n \in \mathcal{B}$. Then, by Axiom 2 in Definition 3.1.1,

$$E_1^c, E_2^c, \dots, E_n^c \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Then, by the result of part (a) in this proposition,

$$E_1^c \cup E_2^c \cup \dots \cup E_n^c \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Thus, by Axiom 2 in Definition 3.1.1,

$$(E_1^c \cup E_2^c \cup \dots \cup E_n^c)^c \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Thus, by De Morgan's Law and the result in part (a) of problem 2 in Assignment #1,

$$E_1 \cap E_2 \cap \dots \cap E_n \in \mathcal{B},$$

which was to be shown. \square

Example 3.3.2. Given a sample space, \mathcal{C} , there are two simple examples of σ -field.

(a) $\mathcal{B} = \{\emptyset, \mathcal{C}\}$ is a σ -field.

(b) Let \mathcal{B} denote the set of all possible subsets of \mathcal{C} . Then, \mathcal{B} is a σ -field.

The following proposition provides more examples of σ -fields.

Proposition 3.3.3. *Let \mathcal{C} be a sample space, and \mathcal{S} be a non-empty collection of subsets of \mathcal{C} . Then the intersection of all σ -fields that contain \mathcal{S} is a σ -field. We denote it by $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$.*

Proof. Observe that every σ -field that contains \mathcal{S} contains the empty set, \emptyset , by Axiom 1 in Definition 3.1.1. Thus, \emptyset is in every σ -field that contains \mathcal{S} . It then follows that $\emptyset \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$.

Next, suppose $E \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$, then E is contained in every σ -field which contains \mathcal{S} . Thus, by Axiom 2 in Definition 3.1.1, E^c is in every σ -field which contains \mathcal{S} . It then follows that $E^c \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$.

Finally, let (E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots) be a sequence in $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$. Then, (E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots) is in every σ -field which contains \mathcal{S} . Thus, by Axiom 3 in Definition 3.1.1,

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$$

is in every σ -field which contains \mathcal{S} . Consequently,

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$$

□

Remark 3.3.4. $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$ is the “smallest” σ -field that contains \mathcal{S} . In fact,

$$\mathcal{S} \subseteq \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S}),$$

since $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$ is the intersection of all σ -fields that contain \mathcal{S} . By the same reason, if \mathcal{E} is any σ -field that contains \mathcal{S} , then $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S}) \subseteq \mathcal{E}$.

Definition 3.3.5. $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{S})$ called the σ -field generated by \mathcal{S} .

Example 3.3.6. Let \mathcal{C} denote the set of real numbers \mathbb{R} . Consider the collection, \mathcal{S} , of semi-infinite intervals of the form $(-\infty, b]$, where $b \in \mathbb{R}$; that is,

$$\mathcal{S} = \{(-\infty, b] \mid b \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Denote by \mathcal{B}_o the σ -field generated by \mathcal{S} . This σ -field is called the **Borel** σ -field of the real line \mathbb{R} . In this example, we explore the different kinds of events in \mathcal{B}_o .

First, observe that since \mathcal{B}_o is closed under the operation of complements, intervals of the form

$$(-\infty, b]^c = (b, +\infty), \quad \text{for } b \in \mathbb{R},$$

are also in \mathcal{B}_o . It then follows that semi-infinite intervals of the form

$$(a, +\infty), \quad \text{for } a \in \mathbb{R},$$

are also in the Borel σ -field \mathcal{B}_o .

Suppose that a and b are real numbers with $a < b$. Then, since

$$(a, b] = (-\infty, b] \cap (a, +\infty),$$

the half-open, half-closed, bounded intervals, $(a, b]$ for $a < b$, are also elements in \mathcal{B}_o .

Next, we show that open intervals (a, b) , for $a < b$, are also events in \mathcal{B}_o . To see why this is so, observe that

$$(a, b) = \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(a, b - \frac{1}{k} \right]. \quad (3.7)$$

To see why this is so, observe that if

$$a < b - \frac{1}{k},$$

then

$$\left(a, b - \frac{1}{k}\right] \subseteq (a, b),$$

since $b - \frac{1}{k} < b$. On the other hand, if

$$a \geq b - \frac{1}{k},$$

then

$$\left(a, b - \frac{1}{k}\right] = \emptyset.$$

It then follows that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(a, b - \frac{1}{k}\right] \subseteq (a, b). \quad (3.8)$$

Now, for any $x \in (a, b)$ we have that $b - x > 0$; then, since $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k} = 0$, we can find a $k_o \geq 1$ such that

$$\frac{1}{k_o} < b - x.$$

It then follows that

$$x < b - \frac{1}{k_o}$$

and therefore

$$x \in \left(a, b - \frac{1}{k_o}\right].$$

Thus,

$$x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(a, b - \frac{1}{k}\right].$$

Consequently,

$$(a, b) \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(a, b - \frac{1}{k}\right]. \quad (3.9)$$

Combining (3.8) and (3.9) yields (3.7).

It follows from Axiom 3 and (3.7) that (a, b) is a Borel set.

3.4 Defining a Probability Function

Given a sample space, \mathcal{C} , and a σ -field, \mathcal{B} , a probability function can be defined on \mathcal{B} .

Definition 3.4.1 (Probability Function). Let \mathcal{C} be a sample space and \mathcal{B} be a σ -field of subsets of \mathcal{C} . A probability function, \Pr , defined on \mathcal{B} is a real valued function

$$\Pr: \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R};$$

that satisfies the axioms:

- (1) $\Pr(\mathcal{C}) = 1$;
- (2) $\Pr(E) \geq 0$ for all $E \in \mathcal{B}$;
- (3) If $(E_1, E_2, E_3 \dots)$ is a sequence of events in \mathcal{B} that are pairwise disjoint subsets of \mathcal{C} (i.e., $E_i \cap E_j = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$), then

$$\Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k) \quad (3.10)$$

Remark 3.4.2. The infinite sum on the right hand side of (3.10) is to be understood as

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k) = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^m \Pr(E_k).$$

Notation. The triple $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ is known as a **Probability Space**.

Remark 3.4.3. The axioms defining probability given in Definition 3.4.1 are known as **Kolmogorov's Axioms** of probability. In the next sections we present properties of probability that can be derived as consequences of these axioms.

3.4.1 Properties of Probability Spaces

Throughout this section, $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ will denote a probability space.

Proposition 3.4.4 (Impossible Event). $\Pr(\emptyset) = 0$.

Proof: We argue by contradiction. Suppose that $\Pr(\emptyset) \neq 0$; then, by Axiom 2 in Definition 3.4.1, $\Pr(\emptyset) > 0$; say $\Pr(\emptyset) = \varepsilon$, for some $\varepsilon > 0$. Then, applying Axiom 3 to the sequence $(\emptyset, \emptyset, \dots)$, so that

$$E_k = \emptyset, \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

we obtain from

$$\emptyset = \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$$

that

$$\Pr(\emptyset) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k),$$

or

$$\varepsilon = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \varepsilon;$$

so that,

$$\varepsilon = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (n\varepsilon),$$

which is impossible because

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (n\varepsilon) = \infty,$$

and ε is a real number. This contradiction shows that

$$\Pr(\emptyset) = 0,$$

which was to be shown. \square

Proposition 3.4.5 (Finite Additivity). Let E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n be pairwise disjoint events in \mathcal{B} ; then,

$$\Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k\right) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k). \quad (3.11)$$

Proof: Apply Axiom 3 in Definition 3.4.1 to the sequence of events

$$(E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n, \emptyset, \emptyset, \dots),$$

so that

$$E_k = \emptyset, \quad \text{for } k = n+1, n+2, n+3, \dots, \quad (3.12)$$

to get

$$\Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k). \quad (3.13)$$

First, we see that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k. \quad (3.14)$$

To establish the assertion in (3.14), note that

$$x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \text{ if and only if } x \in E_k, \text{ for some } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots;$$

so that, given that $E_k = \emptyset$ for $k = n+1, n+2, n+3, \dots$,

$$x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \text{ if and only if } x \in E_k, \text{ for some } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n,$$

which shows (3.14).

Next, we show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k) = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^m \Pr(E_k) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k). \quad (3.15)$$

To see why (3.15) is true, let $m > n$ and compute

$$\sum_{k=1}^m \Pr(E_k) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k) + \sum_{k=n+1}^m \Pr(E_k), \quad \text{for } m > n. \quad (3.16)$$

Now, it follows from (3.12) and Proposition 3.4.4 that

$$\Pr(E_k) = \Pr(\emptyset) = 0, \quad \text{for } k > n.$$

Consequently, in view of (3.16),

$$\sum_{k=1}^m \Pr(E_k) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k), \quad \text{for } m > n. \quad (3.17)$$

Thus, letting $m \rightarrow \infty$ in (3.17),

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^m \Pr(E_k) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k),$$

which shows that the assertion in (3.15) is true.

To complete the proof of (3.11), combine (3.13), (3.14) and (3.15). \square

Proposition 3.4.6 (Monotonicity). Let $A, B \in \mathcal{B}$ be such that $A \subseteq B$. Then,

$$\Pr(A) \leq \Pr(B). \quad (3.18)$$

Proof: First, write

$$B = A \cup (B \setminus A)$$

(Recall that $B \setminus A = B \cap A^c$; thus, $B \setminus A \in \mathcal{B}$.)

Since $A \cap (B \setminus A) = \emptyset$,

$$\Pr(B) = \Pr(A) + \Pr(B \setminus A),$$

by the finite additivity of probability established in Proposition 3.4.5.

Next, since $\Pr(B \setminus A) \geq 0$, by Axiom 2 in Definition 3.4.1,

$$\Pr(B) \geq \Pr(A),$$

which is (3.18). We have therefore proved that

$$A \subseteq B \implies \Pr(A) \leq \Pr(B).$$

\square

Proposition 3.4.7 (Boundedness). For any $E \in \mathcal{B}$,

$$\Pr(E) \leq 1. \quad (3.19)$$

Proof: Since $E \subseteq \mathcal{C}$ for any $E \in \mathcal{B}$, it follows from the monotonicity property of probability (Proposition 3.4.6) that

$$\Pr(E) \leq \Pr(\mathcal{C}). \quad (3.20)$$

The statement in (3.19) then follows from the inequality in (3.20) and Axiom 1 in Definition 3.4.1. \square

Remark 3.4.8. It follows from (3.19) and Axiom 2 that

$$0 \leq \Pr(E) \leq 1, \quad \text{for all } E \in \mathcal{B}.$$

It therefore follows that

$$\Pr: \mathcal{B} \rightarrow [0, 1].$$

Proposition 3.4.9 (Probability of the Complement). For any $E \in \mathcal{B}$,

$$\Pr(E^c) = 1 - \Pr(E). \quad (3.21)$$

Proof: Since E and E^c are disjoint, by the finite additivity of probability (see Proposition 3.4.5), we get that

$$\Pr(E \cup E^c) = \Pr(E) + \Pr(E^c)$$

But $E \cup E^c = \mathcal{C}$ and $\Pr(\mathcal{C}) = 1$ by Axiom 1 in Definition 3.4.1. We therefore get that

$$\Pr(E^c) = 1 - \Pr(E),$$

which is (3.21). \square

Proposition 3.4.10 (Inclusion–Exclusion Principle). For any two events, A and B , in \mathcal{B} ,

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B). \quad (3.22)$$

Proof: Observe first that $A \subseteq A \cup B$ and so we can write,

$$A \cup B = A \cup ((A \cup B) \setminus A);$$

that is, $A \cup B$ can be written as a disjoint union of A and $(A \cup B) \setminus A$, where

$$\begin{aligned} (A \cup B) \setminus A &= (A \cup B) \cap A^c \\ &= (A \cap A^c) \cup (B \cap A^c) \\ &= \emptyset \cup (B \cap A^c) \\ &= B \cap A^c \end{aligned}$$

Thus, by the finite additivity of probability (see Proposition 3.4.5),

$$\Pr(A \cup B) = \Pr(A) + \Pr(B \cap A^c) \quad (3.23)$$

On the other hand, $A \cap B \subseteq B$ and so

$$B = (A \cap B) \cup (B \setminus (A \cap B))$$

where,

$$\begin{aligned} B \setminus (A \cap B) &= B \cap (A \cap B)^c \\ &= B \cap (A^c \cap B^c) \\ &= (B \cap A^c) \cup (B \cap B^c) \\ &= (B \cap A^c) \cup \emptyset \\ &= B \cap A^c \end{aligned}$$

Thus, B is the disjoint union of $A \cap B$ and $B \cap A^c$. Thus,

$$\Pr(B) = \Pr(A \cap B) + \Pr(B \cap A^c), \quad (3.24)$$

by finite additivity again. Solving for $\Pr(B \cap A^c)$ in (3.24) we obtain

$$\Pr(B \cap A^c) = \Pr(B) - \Pr(A \cap B). \quad (3.25)$$

Consequently, substituting the result of (3.25) into the right-hand side of (3.23) yields

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B),$$

which is (3.22). □

Proposition 3.4.11. *Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ be a probability space. Suppose that*

$$(E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots)$$

is a sequence of events in \mathcal{B} satisfying

$$E_1 \subseteq E_2 \subseteq E_3 \subseteq \dots \quad (3.26)$$

Then,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right). \quad (3.27)$$

Proof: First note that, by the monotonicity property of the probability function, the sequence $(\Pr(E_n))$ is a monotone, nondecreasing sequence of real numbers. Furthermore, by the boundedness property in Proposition 3.4.7,

$$\Pr(E_n) \leq 1, \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots;$$

thus, the sequence $(\Pr(E_n))$ is also bounded. Hence, the limit $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n)$ exists.

Define the sequence of events A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots by

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 &= E_1 \\ A_2 &= E_2 \setminus E_1 \\ A_3 &= E_3 \setminus E_2 \\ &\vdots \\ A_k &= E_k \setminus E_{k-1} \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

Then, the events A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots are pairwise disjoint and, therefore, by Axiom 3 in Definition 3.4.1,

$$\Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(A_k), \quad (3.28)$$

where

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(A_k) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(A_k). \quad (3.29)$$

Observe that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k = \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k. \quad (3.30)$$

To see why (3.30) is true, first note that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k = E_n, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \quad (3.31)$$

since $E_k \subseteq E_n$, for $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$, by the assumption in (3.26). Also,

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^n A_k = E_n, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (3.32)$$

To prove the assertion in (3.32), we may proceed by induction on n . First, note that $A_1 = E_1$, by the definition of the events A_k , for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. Next, assume that

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^k A_j = E_k. \quad (3.33)$$

and consider

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^{k+1} A_j = \left(\bigcup_{j=1}^k A_j\right) \cup A_{k+1}. \quad (3.34)$$

Applying the inductive hypothesis in (3.33) and the definition of A_{k+1} , we obtain from (3.34) that

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^{k+1} A_j = E_k \cup (E_{k+1} \setminus E_k) = E_{k+1}.$$

Thus, the assertion in (3.32) is established by induction on n .

Now, if $x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k$, $x \in A_k$, for some k ; thus, by the definition of A_k ,

$x \in E_k$, for some k ; so that, $x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$. We have therefore shown that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k. \quad (3.35)$$

To show the inclusion going the other way, let $x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k$. Then, $x \in E_k$, for some k . Then, since

$$E_k = \bigcup_{j=1}^k A_j,$$

by the assertion in (3.32), $x \in A_j$ for some j ; so that, $x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k$. We have therefore shown that

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \subseteq \bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k. \quad (3.36)$$

Combining (3.35) and (3.36) yields (3.30).

Next, use (3.32) and the finite additivity property to compute

$$\Pr(E_n) = \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(A_k), \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots;$$

so that, in view of (3.29) and (3.28),

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(A_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(A_k) \\ &= \Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} A_k\right) \\ &= \Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right), \end{aligned}$$

where we have also used (3.30). We have therefore established (3.27). \square

Example 3.4.12. Let $\mathcal{C} = \mathbb{R}$ and \mathcal{B} be the Borel σ -field, \mathcal{B}_o , in the real line. Given a nonnegative, bounded, integrable function, $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, satisfying

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = 1,$$

we define a probability function, \Pr , on \mathcal{B}_o as follows

$$\Pr((a, b)) = \int_a^b f(x) \, dx$$

for any bounded, open interval, (a, b) , of real numbers.

Since \mathcal{B}_o is generated by all bounded open intervals, this definition allows us to define \Pr on all Borel sets of the real line. For example, suppose $E = (-\infty, b)$; then, E is the union of the events

$$E_k = (-k, b), \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

where E_k , for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ are bounded, open intervals that are nested in the sense that

$$E_1 \subseteq E_2 \subseteq E_3 \subseteq \dots$$

It then follows from the result in Proposition 3.4.11 that

$$\Pr(E) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^b f(t) dt. \quad (3.37)$$

It is possible to show that, for an arbitrary Borel set, E , $\Pr(E)$ can be computed by some kind of limiting process as illustrated in (3.37).

In the next example we will see the function \Pr defined in Example 3.4.12 satisfies Axiom 1 in Definition 3.4.1.

Example 3.4.13. As another application of the result in Proposition 3.4.11, consider the situation presented in Example 3.4.12. Given an integrable, bounded, non-negative function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1,$$

we define

$$\Pr: \mathcal{B}_o \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

by specifying what it does to generators of \mathcal{B}_o ; for example, open, bounded intervals:

$$\Pr((a, b)) = \int_a^b f(x) dx. \quad (3.38)$$

Then, since \mathbb{R} is the union of the nested intervals $(-k, k)$, for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, it follows from Proposition 3.4.11 that

$$\Pr(\mathbb{R}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr((-n, n)) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-n}^n f(x) dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1.$$

It can also be shown (this is an exercise) that

Proposition 3.4.14. *Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ be a sample space. Suppose that*

$$(E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots)$$

is a sequence of events in \mathcal{B} satisfying

$$E_1 \supseteq E_2 \supseteq E_3 \supseteq \dots$$

Then,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \Pr\left(\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right).$$

Example 3.4.15. [Continuation of Example 3.4.13] Given $a \in \mathbb{R}$, observe that $\{a\}$ is the intersection of the nested intervals $\left(a - \frac{1}{k}, a + \frac{1}{k}\right)$, for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. Then,

$$\Pr(\{a\}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr\left(a - \frac{1}{n}, a + \frac{1}{n}\right);$$

so that, in view of the definition of \Pr in (3.38),

$$\Pr(\{a\}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{a-1/n}^{a+1/n} f(x) \, dx. \quad (3.39)$$

Next, use the assumption that f is bounded to obtain $M > 0$ such that

$$|f(x)| \leq M, \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R},$$

and the corresponding estimate

$$\left| \int_{a-1/n}^{a+1/n} f(x) \, dx \right| \leq M \int_{a-1/n}^{a+1/n} dx = \frac{2M}{n}, \quad \text{for all } n;$$

so that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{a-1/n}^{a+1/n} f(x) \, dx = 0. \quad (3.40)$$

Combining (3.39) and (3.40) we get the result

$$\Pr(\{a\}) = \int_a^a f(x) \, dx = 0.$$

3.4.2 Constructing Probability Functions

In Examples 3.4.12–3.4.15 we illustrated how to construct a probability function on the Borel σ -field of the real line. Essentially, we prescribed what the function does to the generators of the Borel σ -field. When the sample space is finite, the construction of a probability function is more straight forward

Example 3.4.16. Three consecutive tosses of a fair coin yields the sample space

$$\mathcal{C} = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH, TTT\}.$$

We take as our σ -field, \mathcal{B} , to be the collection of all possible subsets of \mathcal{C} .

We define a probability function, \Pr , on \mathcal{B} as follows. Assuming we have a fair coin, all the sequences making up \mathcal{C} are equally likely. Hence, each element of \mathcal{C} must have the same probability value, p . Thus,

$$\Pr(\{HHH\}) = \Pr(\{HHT\}) = \dots = \Pr(\{TTT\}) = p.$$

Thus, by the finite additivity property of probability (see Proposition 3.4.5),

$$\Pr(\mathcal{C}) = 8p.$$

On the other hand, by the probability Axiom 1 in Definition 3.4.1, $\Pr(\mathcal{C}) = 1$, so that

$$8p = 1 \Rightarrow p = \frac{1}{8};$$

thus,

$$\Pr(\{c\}) = \frac{1}{8}, \quad \text{for each } c \in \mathcal{C}. \quad (3.41)$$

Remark 3.4.17. The probability function in (3.41) corresponds to the assumption of **equal likelihood** for a sample space consisting of eight outcomes. We say that the outcomes in \mathcal{C} are equally likely. This is a consequence of the assumption that the coin is fair.

Definition 3.4.18 (Equally Likely Outcomes). *Given a finite sample space, \mathcal{C} , with n outcomes, the probability function*

$$Pr: \mathcal{B} \rightarrow [0, 1],$$

where \mathcal{B} is the set of all subsets of \mathcal{C} , and given by

$$Pr(\{c\}) = \frac{1}{n}, \quad \text{for each } c \in \mathcal{C},$$

corresponds to the assumption of equal likelihood.

Example 3.4.19. Let E denote the event that three consecutive tosses of a fair coin yields exactly one head. Then, using the formula for \Pr in (3.41), and the finite additivity property of probability,

$$\Pr(E) = \Pr(\{HTT, THT, TTH\}) = \frac{3}{8}.$$

Example 3.4.20. Let A denote the event a head comes up in the first toss and B denote the event a head comes up on the second toss in three consecutive tosses of a fair coin. Then,

$$A = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT\}$$

and

$$B = \{HHH, HHT, THH, THT\}.$$

Thus, $\Pr(A) = 1/2$ and $\Pr(B) = 1/2$. On the other hand,

$$A \cap B = \{HHH, HHT\}$$

and therefore

$$\Pr(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{4}.$$

Observe that $\Pr(A \cap B) = \Pr(A) \cdot \Pr(B)$. When this happens, we say that events A and B are independent, i.e., the outcome of the first toss does not influence the outcome of the second toss.

3.5 Independent Events

Definition 3.5.1 (Stochastic Independence). Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ be a probability space. Two events A and B in \mathcal{B} are said to be stochastically independent, or independent, if

$$\Pr(A \cap B) = \Pr(A) \cdot \Pr(B)$$

Example 3.5.2 (Two events that are not independent). There are three chips in a bowl: one is red, the other two are blue. Suppose we draw two chips successively at random and without replacement. Let E_1 denote the event that the first draw is red, and E_2 denote the event that the second draw is blue. Then, the outcome of E_1 will influence the probability of E_2 . For example, if the first draw is red, then the probability of E_2 must be 1 because there are two blue chips left in the bowl; but, if the first draw is blue then the probability of E_2 must be 50% because there are a red chip and a blue chip in the bowl, and there are both equally likely of being drawn in a random draw. Thus, E_1 and E_2 should not be independent. In fact, in this case we get $P(E_1) = \frac{1}{3}$, $P(E_2) = \frac{2}{3}$ and $P(E_1 \cap E_2) = \frac{1}{3} \neq \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{2}{3}$. To see this, observe that the outcomes of the experiment yield the sample space

$$\mathcal{C} = \{RB_1, RB_2, B_1R, B_1B_2, B_2R, B_2B_1\},$$

where R denotes the red chip and B_1 and B_2 denote the two blue chips. Observe that by the nature of the random drawing, all of the outcomes in \mathcal{C} are equally likely. Note that

$$\begin{aligned} E_1 &= \{RB_1, RB_2\}, \\ E_2 &= \{RB_1, RB_2, B_1B_2, B_2B_1\}; \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(E_1) &= \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{3}, \\ \Pr(E_2) &= \frac{4}{6} = \frac{2}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$E_1 \cap E_2 = \{RB_1, RB_2\}$$

so that,

$$\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$$

Thus, $\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) \neq \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2)$; and so E_1 and E_2 are not independent.

Proposition 3.5.3. *Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ be a probability space. If E_1 and E_2 are independent events in \mathcal{B} , then so are*

(a) E_1^c and E_2^c

(b) E_1^c and E_2

(c) E_1 and E_2^c

Proof of (a): Suppose E_1 and E_2 are independent. By De Morgan's Law

$$\Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2^c) = \Pr((E_1 \cup E_2)^c) = 1 - \Pr(E_1 \cup E_2)$$

Thus,

$$\Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2^c) = 1 - (\Pr(E_1) + \Pr(E_2) - \Pr(E_1 \cap E_2))$$

Hence, since E_1 and E_2 are independent,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2^c) &= 1 - \Pr(E_1) - \Pr(E_2) + \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2) \\ &= (1 - \Pr(E_1)) \cdot (1 - \Pr(E_2)) \\ &= P(E_1^c) \cdot P(E_2^c) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, E_1^c and E_2^c are independent. \square

Proof of (b): Suppose E_1 and E_2 are independent; so that

$$\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2).$$

Observe that $E_1 \cap E_2$ is a subset of E_2 , so that we can write E_2 as the disjoint union of $E_1 \cap E_2$ and

$$\begin{aligned} E_2 \setminus (E_1 \cap E_2) &= E_2 \cap (E_1 \cap E_2)^c \\ &= E_2 \cap (E_1^c \cup E_2^c) \\ &= (E_2 \cap E_1^c) \cup (E_2 \cap E_2^c) \\ &= (E_1^c \cap E_2) \cup \emptyset \\ &= E_1^c \cap E_2, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used De Morgan's and the set theoretic distributive property. It then follows that

$$\Pr(E_2) = \Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) + \Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2),$$

from which we get that

$$\Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_2) - \Pr(E_1 \cap E_2).$$

Thus, using the assumption that E_1 and E_2 are independent,

$$\Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_2) - \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2);$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(E_1^c \cap E_2) &= (1 - \Pr(E_1)) \cdot \Pr(E_2) \\ &= P(E_1^c) \cdot P(E_2), \end{aligned}$$

which shows that E_1^c and E_2 are independent. \square

3.6 Conditional Probability

In Example 3.5.2 we saw how the occurrence of an event can have an effect on the probability of another event. In that example, the experiment consisted of drawing chips from a bowl without replacement. Of the three chips in a bowl, one was red, the others were blue. Two chips, one after the other, were drawn at random and without replacement from the bowl. We had two events:

$$\begin{aligned} E_1 & : \text{ The first chip drawn is red,} \\ E_2 & : \text{ The second chip drawn is blue.} \end{aligned}$$

We pointed out the fact that, since the sampling is done without replacement, the probability of E_2 is influenced by the outcome of the first draw. If a red chip is drawn in the first draw, then the probability of E_2 is 1. But, if a blue chip is drawn in the first draw, then the probability of E_2 is $\frac{1}{2}$. We would like to model the situation in which the outcome of the first draw is known.

Suppose we are given a probability space, $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$, and we are told that an event, B , has occurred. Knowing that B is true changes the situation. This can be modeled by introducing a new probability space which we denote by (B, \mathcal{B}_B, P_B) . Thus, since we know B has taken place, we take it to be our new sample space. We define a new σ -field, \mathcal{B}_B , and a new probability function, P_B , as follows:

$$\mathcal{B}_B = \{E \cap B \mid E \in \mathcal{B}\}.$$

This is a σ -field (see Problem 3 in Assignment #2). Indeed,

- (i) Observe that $\emptyset = B^c \cap B \in \mathcal{B}_B$
- (ii) If $E \cap B \in \mathcal{B}_B$, then its complement in B is

$$\begin{aligned} B \setminus (E \cap B) &= B \cap (E \cap B)^c \\ &= B \cap (E^c \cup B^c) \\ &= (B \cap E^c) \cup (B \cap B^c) \\ &= (B \cap E^c) \cup \emptyset \\ &= E^c \cap B. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the complement of $E \cap B$ in B is in \mathcal{B}_B .

- (iii) Let $(E_1 \cap B, E_2 \cap B, E_3 \cap B, \dots)$ be a sequence of events in \mathcal{B}_B ; then, by the distributive property,

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \cap B = \left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \right) \cap B \in \mathcal{B}_B.$$

Next, we define a probability function on \mathcal{B}_B as follows. Assume $P(B) > 0$ and define:

$$P_B(E \cap B) = \frac{\Pr(E \cap B)}{\Pr(B)}, \quad \text{for all } E \in \mathcal{B}.$$

We show that P_B defines a probability function in \mathcal{B}_B (see Problem 5 in Assignment 3).

First, observe that, since

$$\emptyset \subseteq E \cap B \subseteq B \text{ for all } B \in \mathcal{B},$$

$$0 \leq \Pr(E \cap B) \leq \Pr(B) \text{ for all } E \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Thus, dividing by $\Pr(B)$ yields that

$$0 \leq P_B(E \cap B) \leq 1 \text{ for all } E \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Observe also that

$$P_B(B) = 1.$$

Finally, if E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots are mutually disjoint events, then so are $E_1 \cap B, E_2 \cap B, E_3 \cap B, \dots$. It then follows that

$$\Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} (E_k \cap B)\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \Pr(E_k \cap B).$$

Thus, dividing by $\Pr(B)$ yields that

$$P_B\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} (E_k \cap B)\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} P_B(E_k \cap B).$$

Hence, $P_B: \mathcal{B}_B \rightarrow [0, 1]$ is indeed a probability function.

Notation: we write $P_B(E \cap B)$ as $\Pr(E | B)$, which is read "probability of E given B" and we call this the conditional probability of E given B.

Definition 3.6.1 (Conditional Probability). Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ denote a probability space. For an event B with $\Pr(B) > 0$, we define the conditional probability of any event E given B to be

$$\Pr(E | B) = \frac{\Pr(E \cap B)}{\Pr(B)}.$$

Example 3.6.2 (Example 3.5.2 revisited). In the example of the three chips (one red, two blue) in a bowl, we had

$$\begin{aligned} E_1 &= \{RB_1, RB_2\} \\ E_2 &= \{RB_1, RB_2, B_1B_2, B_2B_1\} \\ E_1^c &= \{B_1R, B_1B_2, B_2R, B_2B_1\} \end{aligned}$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} E_1 \cap E_2 &= \{RB_1, RB_2\} \\ E_2 \cap E_1^c &= \{B_1B_2, B_2B_1\} \end{aligned}$$

Then $\Pr(E_1) = 1/3$ and $\Pr(E_1^c) = 2/3$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) &= 1/3 \\ \Pr(E_2 \cap E_1^c) &= 1/3\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\Pr(E_2 | E_1) = \frac{\Pr(E_2 \cap E_1)}{\Pr(E_1)} = \frac{1/3}{1/3} = 1$$

and

$$\Pr(E_2 | E_1^c) = \frac{\Pr(E_2 \cap E_1^c)}{\Pr(E_1^c)} = \frac{1/3}{2/3} = 1/2.$$

These calculations verify the intuition we have about the occurrence of event E_1 have an effect of the probability of event E_2 .

3.6.1 Some Properties of Conditional Probabilities

- (i) For any events E_1 and E_2 , $\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2 | E_1)$.

Proof: If $\Pr(E_1) = 0$, then from $\emptyset \subseteq E_1 \cap E_2 \subseteq E_1$ we get that

$$0 \leq \Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) \leq \Pr(E_1) = 0.$$

Thus, $\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = 0$ and the result is true.

Next, if $\Pr(E_1) > 0$, from the definition of conditional probability we get that

$$\Pr(E_2 | E_1) = \frac{\Pr(E_2 \cap E_1)}{\Pr(E_1)},$$

and we therefore get that $\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2 | E_1)$. \square

- (ii) Assume $\Pr(E_2) > 0$. Events E_1 and E_2 are independent if and only if

$$\Pr(E_1 | E_2) = \Pr(E_1).$$

Proof. Suppose first that E_1 and E_2 are independent. Then,

$$\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) = \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2),$$

and therefore

$$\Pr(E_1 | E_2) = \frac{\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2)}{\Pr(E_2)} = \frac{\Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2)}{\Pr(E_2)} = \Pr(E_1).$$

Conversely, suppose that $\Pr(E_1 | E_2) = \Pr(E_1)$. Then, by the result in (i),

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(E_1 \cap E_2) &= \Pr(E_2 \cap E_1) \\ &= \Pr(E_2) \cdot \Pr(E_1 | E_2) \\ &= \Pr(E_2) \cdot \Pr(E_1) \\ &= \Pr(E_1) \cdot \Pr(E_2),\end{aligned}$$

which shows that E_1 and E_2 are independent. \square

(iii) Assume $\Pr(B) > 0$. Then, for any event E ,

$$\Pr(E^c | B) = 1 - \Pr(E | B).$$

Proof: Recall that $\Pr(E^c | B) = P_B(E^c \cap B)$, where P_B defines a probability function of \mathcal{B}_B . Thus, since $E^c \cap B$ is the complement of $E \cap B$ in B , we obtain

$$P_B(E^c \cap B) = 1 - P_B(E \cap B).$$

Consequently, $\Pr(E^c | B) = 1 - \Pr(E | B)$. \square

(iv) We say that events $E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots, E_n$ are mutually exclusive events if they are pairwise disjoint (i.e., $E_i \cap E_j = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$) and

$$\mathcal{C} = \bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k.$$

Suppose also that $P(E_i) > 0$ for $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$.

Let B be another event in \mathcal{B} . Then,

$$B = B \cap \mathcal{C} = B \cap \bigcup_{k=1}^n E_k = \bigcup_{k=1}^n B \cap E_k$$

Since $B \cap E_1, B \cap E_2, \dots, B \cap E_n$ are pairwise disjoint,

$$P(B) = \sum_{k=1}^n P(B \cap E_k)$$

or

$$P(B) = \sum_{k=1}^n P(E_k) \cdot P(B | E_k),$$

by the definition of conditional probability. This is called the **Law of Total Probability**.

Example 3.6.3 (An Application of the Law of Total Probability). Medical tests can have false-positive results and false-negative results. That is, a person who does not have the disease might test positive, or a sick person might test negative, respectively. The proportion of false-positive results is called the **false-positive rate**, while that of false-negative results is called the **false-negative rate**. These rates can be expressed as conditional probabilities. For example, suppose the test is to determine if a person is HIV positive. Let T_P denote the event that, in a given population, the person tests positive for HIV, and T_N denote the event that the person tests negative. Let H_P denote the event that the person tested is HIV positive and let H_N denote the event that the person is HIV negative. The false positive rate is $\Pr(T_P | H_N)$ and the false negative rate is $\Pr(T_N | H_P)$. These rates are assumed to be known and,

ideally, are very small. For instance, in the United States, according to a 2005 study presented in the *Annals of Internal Medicine*,¹ $\Pr(T_P | H_N) = 1.5\%$ and $\Pr(T_N | H_P) = 0.3\%$. That same year, the prevalence of HIV infections was estimated by the CDC to be about 0.6%, that is $\Pr(H_P) = 0.006$

Suppose a person in this population is tested for HIV and that the test comes back positive, what is the probability that the person really is HIV positive? That is, what is $\Pr(H_P | T_P)$?

Solution:

$$\Pr(H_P | T_P) = \frac{\Pr(H_P \cap T_P)}{\Pr(T_P)} = \frac{\Pr(T_P | H_P)\Pr(H_P)}{\Pr(T_P)}$$

But, by the law of total probability, since $H_P \cup H_N = \mathcal{C}$,

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(T_P) &= \Pr(H_P)\Pr(T_P | H_P) + \Pr(H_N)\Pr(T_P | H_N) \\ &= \Pr(H_P)[1 - \Pr(T_N | H_P)] + \Pr(H_N)\Pr(T_P | H_N)\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(H_P | T_P) &= \frac{[1 - \Pr(T_N | H_P)]\Pr(H_P)}{\Pr(H_P)[1 - \Pr(T_N | H_P)] + \Pr(H_N)\Pr(T_P | H_N)} \\ &= \frac{(1 - 0.003)(0.006)}{(0.006)(1 - 0.003) + (0.994)(0.015)},\end{aligned}$$

which is about 0.286 or 28.6%. □

In general, if $\Pr(B) > 0$ and $\mathcal{C} = E_1 \cup E_2 \cup \dots \cup E_n$, where $E_1, E_2, E_3, \dots, E_n$ are mutually exclusive, then

$$\Pr(E_j | B) = \frac{\Pr(B \cap E_j)}{\Pr(B)} = \frac{\Pr(B \cap E_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_i)\Pr(B | E_k)}$$

This result is known as **Baye's Theorem**, and is also be written as

$$\Pr(E_j | B) = \frac{\Pr(E_j)\Pr(B | E_j)}{\sum_{k=1}^n \Pr(E_k)\Pr(B | E_k)}$$

Remark 3.6.4. The specificity of a test is the proportion of healthy individuals that will test negative; this is the same as

$$\begin{aligned}1 - \text{false positive rate} &= 1 - P(T_P | H_N) \\ &= P(T_P^c | H_N) \\ &= P(T_N | H_N)\end{aligned}$$

The proportion of sick people that will test positive is called the sensitivity of a test and is also obtained as

$$\begin{aligned}1 - \text{false negative rate} &= 1 - P(T_N | H_P) \\ &= P(T_N^c | H_P) \\ &= P(T_P | H_P)\end{aligned}$$

¹“Screening for HIV: A Review of the Evidence for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force”, *Annals of Internal Medicine*, Chou et. al, Volume 143 Issue 1, pp. 55-73

Example 3.6.5 (Sensitivity and specificity). A test to detect prostate cancer has a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 80%. It is estimated that, on average, 1 in 1,439 men in the USA are afflicted by prostate cancer. If a man tests positive for prostate cancer, what is the probability that he actually has cancer? Let T_N and T_P represent testing negatively and testing positively, respectively, and let C_N and C_P denote being healthy and having prostate cancer, respectively. Then,

$$\Pr(T_P | C_P) = 0.95,$$

$$\Pr(T_N | C_N) = 0.80,$$

$$\Pr(C_P) = \frac{1}{1439} \approx 0.0007,$$

and

$$\Pr(C_P | T_P) = \frac{\Pr(C_P \cap T_P)}{\Pr(T_P)} = \frac{\Pr(C_P)\Pr(T_P | C_P)}{\Pr(T_P)} = \frac{(0.0007)(0.95)}{\Pr(T_P)},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(T_P) &= \Pr(C_P)\Pr(T_P | C_P) + \Pr(C_N)\Pr(T_P | C_N) \\ &= (0.0007)(0.95) + (0.9993)(.20) = 0.2005. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\Pr(C_P | T_P) = \frac{(0.0007)(0.95)}{0.2005} = 0.00392.$$

And so if a man tests positive for prostate cancer, there is a less than .4% probability of actually having prostate cancer.

Chapter 4

Random Variables

4.1 Definition of Random Variable

Suppose we toss a coin N times in a row and that the probability of a head is p , where $0 < p < 1$; i.e., $\Pr(H) = p$. Then $\Pr(T) = 1 - p$. The sample space for this experiment is \mathcal{C} , the collection of all possible sequences of H 's and T 's of length N . Thus, \mathcal{C} contains 2^N elements. The set of all subsets of \mathcal{C} , which contains 2^{2^N} elements, is the σ -field we'll be working with. Suppose we pick an element of \mathcal{C} , call it c . One thing we might be interested in is "How many heads (H 's) are in the sequence c ?" This defines a function which we can call, X , from \mathcal{C} to the set of integers. Thus

$$X(c) = \text{the number of } H\text{'s in } c.$$

This is an example of a random variable.

More generally,

Definition 4.1.1 (Random Variable). Given a probability space $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$, a random variable X is a function $X : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ for which the set $\{c \in \mathcal{C} \mid X(c) \leq a\}$ is an element of the σ -field \mathcal{B} for every $a \in \mathbb{R}$.

Thus we can compute the probability

$$\Pr[\{c \in \mathcal{C} \mid X(c) \leq a\}]$$

for every $a \in \mathbb{R}$.

Notation. We denote the set $\{c \in \mathcal{C} \mid X(c) \leq a\}$ by $(X \leq a)$.

Example 4.1.2. The probability that a coin comes up head is p , for $0 < p < 1$. Flip the coin N times and count the number of heads that come up. Let X be that number; then, X is a random variable. We compute the following probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \leq 0) &= P(X = 0) = (1 - p)^N \\ P(X \leq 1) &= P(X = 0) + P(X = 1) = (1 - p)^N + Np(1 - p)^{N-1} \end{aligned}$$

There are two kinds of random variables:

- (1) X is discrete if X takes on values in a finite set, or countable infinite set (that is, a set whose elements can be listed in a sequence x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots)
- (2) X is continuous if X can take on any value in interval of real numbers.

Example 4.1.3 (Discrete Random Variable). Flip a coin three times in a row and let X denote the number of heads that come up. Then, the possible values of X are 0, 1, 2 or 3. Hence, X is discrete.

4.2 Distribution Functions

Definition 4.2.1 (Probability Mass Function). Given a discrete random variable X defined on a probability space $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$, the *probability mass function*, or pmf, of X is defined by

$$p_x(x) = \Pr(X = x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Remark 4.2.2. Here we adopt the convention that random variables will be denoted by capital letters (X, Y, Z , etc.) and their values are denoted by the corresponding lower case letters (x, x, z , etc.).

Example 4.2.3 (Probability Mass Function). Assume the coin in Example 4.1.3 is fair. Then, all the outcomes in then sample space

$$\mathcal{C} = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH, TTT\}$$

are equally likely. It then follows that

$$\Pr(X = 0) = \Pr(\{TTT\}) = \frac{1}{8},$$

$$\Pr(X = 1) = \Pr(\{HTT, THT, TTH\}) = \frac{3}{8},$$

$$\Pr(X = 2) = \Pr(\{HHT, HTH, THH\}) = \frac{3}{8},$$

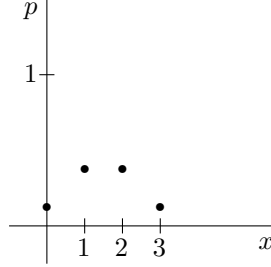
and

$$\Pr(X = 3) = \Pr(\{HHH\}) = \frac{1}{8}.$$

We then have that the pmf for X is

$$p_x(x) = \begin{cases} 1/8, & \text{if } x = 0; \\ 3/8, & \text{if } x = 1; \\ 3/8, & \text{if } x = 2; \\ 1/8, & \text{if } x = 3; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

A graph of this function is pictured in Figure 4.2.1.

Figure 4.2.1: Probability Mass Function for X

Remark 4.2.4 (Properties of probability mass functions). In the previous example observe that the values of p_X are non-negative and add up to 1; that is, $p_X(x) \geq 0$ for all x and

$$\sum_x p_X(x) = 1.$$

We usually just list the values of X for which $p_X(x)$ is not 0:

$$p_X(x_1), p_X(x_2), \dots, p_X(x_N),$$

in the case in which X takes on a finite number of non-zero values, or

$$p_X(x_1), p_X(x_2), p_X(x_3), \dots$$

if X takes on countably many values with nonzero probability. We then have that

$$\sum_{k=1}^N p_X(x_k) = 1$$

in the finite case, and

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} p_X(x_k) = 1$$

in the countably infinite case.

Definition 4.2.5 (Cumulative Distribution Function). Given any random variable X defined on a probability space $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$, the *cumulative distribution function*, or *cdf*, of X is defined by

$$F_X(x) = \Pr(X \leq x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Example 4.2.6 (Cumulative Distribution Function). Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ and X be as defined in Example 4.2.3. We compute F_X as follows:

First observe that if $x < 0$, then $\Pr(X \leq x) = 0$; thus,

$$F_X(x) = 0, \quad \text{for all } x < 0.$$

Note that $p_X(x) = 0$ for $0 < x < 1$; it then follows that

$$F_X(x) = \Pr(X \leq x) = \Pr(X = 0) \quad \text{for } 0 < x < 1.$$

On the other hand, $\Pr(X \leq 1) = \Pr(X = 0) + \Pr(X = 1) = 1/8 + 3/8 = 1/2$; thus,

$$F_X(1) = 1/2.$$

Next, since $p_X(x) = 0$ for all $1 < x < 2$, we also get that

$$F_X(x) = 1/2 \quad \text{for } 1 < x < 2.$$

Continuing in this fashion we obtain the following formula for F_X :

$$F_X(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x < 0; \\ 1/8, & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1; \\ 1/2, & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2; \\ 7/8, & \text{if } 2 \leq x < 3; \\ 1, & \text{if } x \geq 3. \end{cases}$$

Figure 4.2.2 shows the graph of F_X .

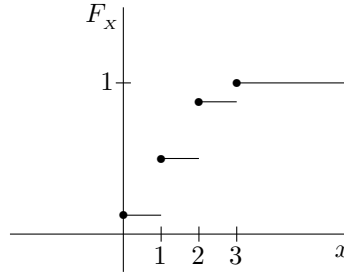


Figure 4.2.2: Cumulative Distribution Function for X

Remark 4.2.7. The graph in Figure 4.2.2 illustrates several properties of cumulative distribution functions, which we state in the following proposition.

Proposition 4.2.8 (Properties of Cumulative Distribution Functions). Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ be a probability space and $X: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a random variable. Let $F_X: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the cumulative distribution function of X ; that is,

$$F_X(x) = \Pr(X \leq x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (4.1)$$

Then, the following are true.

- (i) F_X is non-negative and non-decreasing; that is, $F_X(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $F_X(a) \leq F_X(b)$ whenever $a < b$.

$$(ii) \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} F_X(x) = 0 \text{ and } \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} F_X(x) = 1.$$

(iii) F_X is right-continuous or upper semi-continuous; that is,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} F_X(x) = F_X(a)$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{R}$. Observe that the limit is taken as x approaches a from the right.

Proof of (i): By the second Kolmogorov axiom of Probability in Definition 3.4.1, $\Pr(X \leq x) \geq 0$, for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, from which we get that $F_X(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Next, let $a < b$. Then, the event $(X \leq a)$ is a subset of the event $(X \leq b)$, since $c \in (X \leq a)$ implies that $X(c) \leq a$; so that, $X(c) \leq b$. Consequently, by the monotonicity property of probability (see Proposition 3.4.6),

$$\Pr(x \leq a) \leq \Pr(x \leq b),$$

from which we get that $F_X(a) \leq F_X(b)$. \square

Proof of (ii): Let (b_n) be an increasing sequence of real numbers satisfying

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = +\infty, \tag{4.2}$$

and put

$$E_n = (X \leq b_n), \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 2, \dots \tag{4.3}$$

Then, since (b_n) is an increasing sequence,

$$E_1 \subseteq E_2 \subseteq E_3 \subseteq \dots$$

Thus, we can invoke Proposition 3.4.11 on page 24 in these notes to get that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \Pr\left(\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right), \tag{4.4}$$

where, in view of (4.3) and (4.2),

$$\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \mathcal{C}, \tag{4.5}$$

since the random variable X is real-valued. It then follows from (4.4), (4.3) and the definition of cumulative distribution function in (4.1) that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_X(b_n) = 1, \tag{4.6}$$

where we have also used (4.5) and the first Kolmogorov axiom of Probability in Definition 3.4.1.

Since the assertion in (4.6) is true for any increasing sequence (b_n) satisfying (4.2), we deduce from (4.6) that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} F_X(x) = 1.$$

For the other assertion in (ii) of Proposition 4.2.8, let (a_n) be a decreasing sequence of real numbers satisfying

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = -\infty, \quad (4.7)$$

and put

$$E_n = (X \leq a_n), \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 2, \dots \quad (4.8)$$

Then, since (a_n) is a decreasing sequence,

$$E_1 \supseteq E_2 \supseteq E_3 \supseteq \dots$$

Thus, by Proposition 3.4.14 on page 27 in these notes

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \Pr\left(\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right). \quad (4.9)$$

Next, we see that

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = \emptyset. \quad (4.10)$$

If the assertion in (4.10) is not true, according to the definitions of the events E_n in (4.8), there exists $c \in \mathcal{C}$ such that

$$X(c) \leq a_n, \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (4.11)$$

Thus, letting n tend to ∞ in (4.11) and using (4.8),

$$X(c) = -\infty,$$

which contradicts the fact that the random variable X is real valued. This contradiction establishes (4.10). It then follows from (4.8), (4.9) and (4.10) that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X \leq a_n) = \Pr(\emptyset), \quad (4.12)$$

for any decreasing sequence of real numbers (a_n) satisfying (4.7).

It follows from (4.12) and the definition of the cumulative distribution function in (4.1) that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_X(a_n) = 0, \quad (4.13)$$

for any decreasing sequence of real numbers (a_n) satisfying (4.7), where we have also used Proposition 3.4.4, the impossible event.

Since (4.13) is true for any decreasing sequence of real numbers (a_n) satisfying (4.7),

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} F_X(x) = 0.$$

□

Proof of (iii): Let (ε_n) be a sequence of positive numbers that decreases to 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$, and define

$$E_n = (X \leq a + \varepsilon_n), \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 2, \dots \quad (4.14)$$

Then, since (ε_n) is a decreasing sequence,

$$E_1 \supseteq E_2 \supseteq E_3 \supseteq \dots$$

Thus, by Proposition 3.4.14 on page 27 in these notes

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(E_n) = \Pr\left(\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k\right). \quad (4.15)$$

We show that

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k = (X \leq a). \quad (4.16)$$

We first note that, according to the definition of events E_n in (4.14),

$$(X \leq a) \subset E_k, \quad \text{for all } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Consequently,

$$(X \leq a) \subseteq \bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k. \quad (4.17)$$

Next, let

$$c \in \bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k.$$

Then,

$$c \in E_k, \quad \text{for all } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots;$$

so that, according to the definition of events E_n in (4.14),

$$X(c) \leq a + \varepsilon_k, \quad \text{for all } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (4.18)$$

Thus, letting $k \rightarrow \infty$ in (4.18), and using the assumption that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \varepsilon_n = 0, \quad (4.19)$$

$$X(c) \leq a,$$

which shows that $c \in (X \leq a)$. We have therefore shown that

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k \subseteq (X \leq a). \quad (4.20)$$

Combining (4.17) and (4.20) yields (4.16).

It follows from (4.15), (4.16) and the definition of the events E_n in (4.14) that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X \leq a + \varepsilon_n) = \Pr(X \leq a), \quad (4.21)$$

for any decreasing sequence, (ε_n) , of positive numbers satisfying (4.19).

Using the definition of the cumulative distribution function in (4.1), we can rewrite (4.21) as

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_X(a + \varepsilon_n) = F_X(a), \quad (4.22)$$

for any decreasing sequence of positive numbers (ε_n) satisfying (4.19)

Since (4.22) is true for any decreasing sequence of positive numbers (ε_n) satisfying (4.19),

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} F_X(x) = F_X(a);$$

so that, the cumulative distribution function of X is right continuous, or upper semi-continuous. \square

Example 4.2.9 (The Indicator Function). Let $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}, \Pr)$ denote a probability space. Given $A \in \mathcal{B}$, define $\chi_A : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$\chi_A(c) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } c \in A; \\ 0, & \text{if } c \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (4.23)$$

χ_A is called the indicator function of A .

First, we verify that the function χ_A defined in (4.23) is a random variable according to Definition 4.1.1. To see this, note that, for $b < 0$,

$$(\chi_A < b) = \emptyset,$$

which is in the σ -field \mathcal{B} . For, $0 \leq b < 1$,

$$(\chi_A < b) = A^c,$$

which is also in the σ -field \mathcal{B} , since $A \in \mathcal{B}$. Finally, if $b > 1$,

$$(\chi_A < b) = \mathcal{C},$$

which is also in the σ -field \mathcal{B} .

Since χ_A takes on the values 0 and 1, χ_A is a discrete random variable. Setting $p = \Pr(A)$, we compute the pmf of χ_A to be

$$p_{\chi_A}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - p, & \text{if } x = 0; \\ p, & \text{if } x = 1; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases} \quad (4.24)$$

The distribution in (4.24) is a special discrete distribution known as the **Bernoulli** distribution with parameter p . We write

$$\chi_A \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p).$$

Definition 4.2.10 (The Bernoulli Distribution). Let X denote a random variable that takes on the values 0 and 1. We say that X has a Bernoulli distribution with parameter p , where $p \in (0, 1)$, if X has pmf given by

$$p_X(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - p, & \text{if } x = 0; \\ p, & \text{if } x = 1; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

The cdf of X is then

$$F_X(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x < 0; \\ 1 - p, & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1; \\ 1, & \text{if } x \geq 1. \end{cases}$$

A sketch of F_X is shown in Figure 4.2.3.

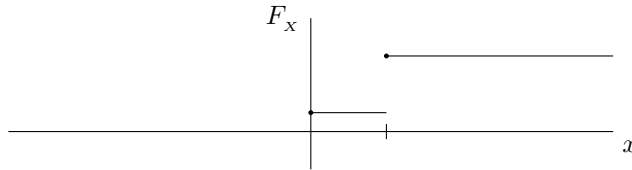


Figure 4.2.3: Cumulative Distribution Function of Bernoulli Random Variable

Next, we present an example of a continuous random variable.

Example 4.2.11 (Service time at a checkout counter). Suppose you sit by a checkout counter at a supermarket and measure the time, T , it takes for each customer to be served. This is a continuous random variable that takes on values in a time continuum. We would like to compute the cumulative distribution function $F_T(t) = \Pr(T \leq t)$, for all $t > 0$.

Let $N(t)$ denote the number of customers being served at a checkout counter (not in line) at time t . Then $N(t) = 1$ or $N(t) = 0$. Let $p(t) = \Pr[N(t) = 1]$ and assume that $p(t)$ is a differentiable function of t . Note that, for each $t \geq 0$, $N(t)$ is a discrete random variable with a Bernoulli distribution with parameter $p(t)$. We also assume that $p(0) = 1$; that is, at the start of the observation, one person is being served.

Consider now $p(t + \Delta t)$, where Δt is very small; i.e., the probability that a person is being served at time $t + \Delta t$. Suppose that, approximately, the probability that service will be completed in the short time interval $[t, t + \Delta t]$ is proportional to Δt . In symbols, we write

$$\Pr(N(t + \Delta t) = 0 \mid N(t) = 1) \approx k\Delta t, \quad \text{for small } \Delta t, \quad (4.25)$$

where $k > 0$ is a proportionality constant. Then, the probability that service will not be completed at $t + \Delta t$ is, approximately, $1 - \mu\Delta t$; that is,

$$\Pr(N(t + \Delta t) = 1 \mid N(t) = 1) \approx 1 - k\Delta t, \quad \text{for small } \Delta t. \quad (4.26)$$

This situation and assumptions are illustrated in the *state diagram* pictured in Figure 4.2.4. The circles in the state diagram represent the possible values of

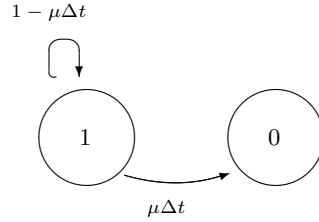


Figure 4.2.4: State diagram for $N(t)$

$N(t)$, or *states*. In this case, the states are 1 or 0, corresponding to one person being served and no person being served, respectively. The arrows represent approximate *transition probabilities* from one state to another (or the same) in the interval from t to $t + \Delta t$. Thus the probability of going from state $N(t) = 1$ to state $N(t + \Delta t) = 0$ in that interval (that is, service is completed) is approximately $k\Delta t$, while the probability that the person will still be at the counter at the end of the interval is approximately $1 - k\Delta t$. These are the conditional probabilities in (4.25) and (4.26), respectively.

We may use the information in the state diagram in Figure 4.2.4 and the law of total probability to justify the following estimation for $p(t + \Delta t)$, when Δt is small:

$$\begin{aligned} p(t + \Delta t) &\approx p(t)\Pr[N(t + \Delta t) = 1 \mid N(t) = 1] \\ &\quad + (1 - p(t))\Pr[N(t + \Delta t) = 1 \mid N(t) = 0], \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\Pr[N(t + \Delta t) = 1 \mid N(t) = 1] \approx 1 - k\Delta t,$$

and

$$\Pr[N(t + \Delta t) = 1 \mid N(t) = 0] \approx 0,$$

since there is no transition from state 0 to state 1, according to the state diagram in Figure 4.2.4. We therefore get that

$$p(t + \Delta t) \approx p(t)(1 - k\Delta t), \quad \text{for small } \Delta t,$$

or

$$p(t + \Delta t) - p(t) \approx -k(\Delta t)p(t), \quad \text{for small } \Delta t.$$

Dividing the last expression by $\Delta t \neq 0$ we obtain

$$\frac{p(t + \Delta t) - p(t)}{\Delta t} \approx -kp(t), \quad \text{for small } \Delta t \neq 0.$$

Thus, letting $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ and using the the assumption that p is differentiable, we get

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = -kp(t). \quad (4.27)$$

Notice that we no longer have and approximate result; this is possible by the assumption of differentiability of $p(t)$.

Since $p(0) = 1$, it follows from (4.27) that $p(t) = e^{-kt}$ for $t \geq 0$.

Recall that T denotes the time it takes for service to be completed, or the service time at the checkout counter. Thus, the event $(T > t)$ is equivalent to the event $(N(t) = 1)$, since $T > t$ implies that service has not been completed at time t and, therefore, $N(t) = 1$ at that time. It then follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr[T > t] &= \Pr[N(t) = 1] \\ &= p(t) \\ &= e^{-kt} \end{aligned}$$

for all $t > 0$; so that

$$\Pr[T \leq t] = 1 - e^{-kt}, \quad \text{for } t \geq 0.$$

Thus, T is a continuous random variable with *cdf*

$$F_T(t) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-kt}, & \text{if } t > 0; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases} \quad (4.28)$$

A graph of this cdf for $t \geq 0$ is shown in Figure 4.2.5.

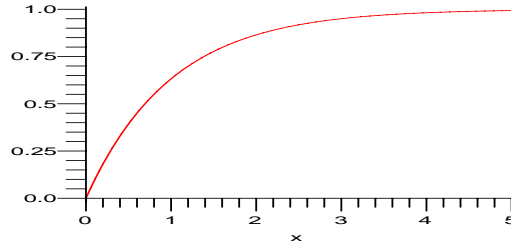


Figure 4.2.5: Cumulative Distribution Function for T

Definition 4.2.12 (Probability Density Function). Let X denote a continuous random variable with cdf $F_X(x) = \Pr(X \leq x)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Assume that F_X is

differentiable, except possibly at a countable number of points. We define the probability density function (pdf) of X to be the derivative of F_X wherever F_X is differentiable. We denote the pdf of X by f_X and set

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} F'_X(x), & \text{if } F_X \text{ is differentiable at } x; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

Example 4.2.13. In the service time example, Example 4.2.11, if T is the time that it takes for service to be completed at a checkout counter, then the cdf for T is as given in (4.28),

$$F_T(t) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-kt}, & \text{for } t \geq 0; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases}$$

for some positive parameter $k > 0$. It then follows from Definition 4.2.12 that

$$f_T(t) = \begin{cases} ke^{-kt}, & \text{for } t > 0; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases}$$

for some $k > 0$, is the pdf for T , and we say that T follows an **exponential distribution** with parameter $1/k$. We will see the significance of this parameter in the next chapter.

In general, any function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that is non-negative and integrable, with

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = 1,$$

defines the pdf for some continuous random variable X . The cdf for that random variable X is then given by

$$F_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) \, dt \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Indeed, the probability of any event ($a < X \leq b$), for real numbers a and b , with $a < b$, is given by the formula

$$\Pr(a < X \leq b) = \int_a^b f(x) \, dx$$

Example 4.2.14. Let a and b be real numbers with $a < b$. The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b-a} & \text{if } a < x < b, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

defines a pdf since

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = \int_a^b \frac{1}{b-a} \, dx = 1,$$

and f is non-negative.

Definition 4.2.15 (Uniform Distribution). A continuous random variable, X , having the pdf given in the previous example is said to be uniformly distributed on the interval (a, b) . We write

$$X \sim \text{Uniform}(a, b).$$

Example 4.2.16 (Finding the distribution for the square of a random variable). Let $X \sim \text{Uniform}(-1, 1)$ and $Y = X^2$ give the pdf for Y .

Solution: Since $X \sim \text{Uniform}(-1, 1)$ its pdf is given by

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } -1 < x < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We would like to compute $f_Y(y)$ for $0 < y < 1$. In order to do this, first we compute the cdf $F_Y(y)$ for $0 < y < 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= \Pr(Y \leq y), \quad \text{for } 0 < y < 1, \\ &= \Pr(X^2 \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(|Y| \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= \Pr(-\sqrt{y} \leq X \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= \Pr(-\sqrt{y} < X \leq \sqrt{y}), \quad \text{since } X \text{ is continuous,} \\ &= \Pr(X \leq \sqrt{y}) - \Pr(X \leq -\sqrt{y}) \\ &= F_x(\sqrt{y}) - F_x(-\sqrt{y}). \end{aligned}$$

Differentiating with respect to y we then obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= \frac{d}{dy} F_Y(y) \\ &= \frac{d}{dy} F_x(\sqrt{y}) - \frac{d}{dy} F_x(-\sqrt{y}) \\ &= F'_x(\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{d}{dy} \sqrt{y} - F'_x(-\sqrt{y}) \frac{d}{dy} (-\sqrt{y}), \end{aligned}$$

by the Chain Rule, so that

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= f_x(\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} + f'_x(-\sqrt{y}) \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \end{aligned}$$

for $0 < y < 1$. We then have that

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}}, & \text{if } 0 < y < 1; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

□

Chapter 5

Expectation of Random Variables

5.1 Expected Value of a Random Variable

Definition 5.1.1 (Expected Value of a Continuous Random Variable). Let X be a continuous random variable with pdf f_X . If

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x|f_X(x) dx < \infty,$$

we define the **expected value of X** , denoted $E(X)$, by

$$E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf_X(x) dx.$$

Example 5.1.2 (Average Service Time). In the service time example, Example 4.2.11, we showed that the time, T , that it takes for service to be completed at checkout counter has an exponential distribution with pdf

$$f_T(t) = \begin{cases} \mu e^{-\mu t}, & \text{for } t > 0; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where μ is a positive constant.

Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |t|f_T(t) dt &= \int_0^{\infty} t\mu e^{-\mu t} dt \\
 &= \lim_{b \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^b t \mu e^{-\mu t} dt \\
 &= \lim_{b \rightarrow \infty} \left[-te^{-\mu t} - \frac{1}{\mu} e^{-\mu t} \right]_0^b \\
 &= \lim_{b \rightarrow \infty} \left[\frac{1}{\mu} - be^{-\mu b} - \frac{1}{\mu} e^{-\mu b} \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\mu},
 \end{aligned}$$

where we have used integration by parts and L'Hospital's rule. It then follows that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |t|f_T(t) dt = \frac{1}{\mu} < \infty$$

and therefore the expected value of T exists and

$$E(T) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} tf_T(t) dt = \int_0^{\infty} t\mu e^{-\mu t} dt = \frac{1}{\mu}.$$

Thus, the parameter μ is the reciprocal of the expected service time, or **average service time**, at the checkout counter.

Example 5.1.3. Suppose the average service time, or **mean service time**, at a checkout counter is 5 minutes. Compute the probability that a given person will spend at least 6 minutes at the checkout counter.

Solution: We assume that the service time, T , is exponentially distributed with pdf

$$f_T(t) = \begin{cases} \mu e^{-\mu t}, & \text{for } t > 0; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where $\mu = 1/5$. We then have that

$$\Pr(T \geq 6) = \int_6^{\infty} f_T(t) dt = \int_6^{\infty} \frac{1}{5} e^{-t/5} dt = e^{-6/5} \approx 0.30.$$

Thus, there is a 30% chance that a person will spend 6 minutes or more at the checkout counter. \square

Definition 5.1.4 (Exponential Distribution). A continuous random variable, X , is said to be exponentially distributed with parameter $\beta > 0$, written

$$X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta),$$

if it has a pdf given by

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\beta} e^{-x/\beta} & \text{for } x > 0, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The expected value of $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta)$, for $\beta > 0$, is $E(X) = \beta$.

Example 5.1.5 (A Distribution without Expectation). Let $X \sim \text{Uniform}(0, 1)$ and define $Y = 1/X$. We determine the distribution for Y and show that Y does not have an expected value. In order to do this, we need to compute $f_Y(y)$ and then check that the integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |y| f_Y(y) dy$$

does not converge.

To find $f_Y(y)$, we first determine the cdf of Y . Observe that possible values for Y are $y > 1$, since possible values for X are $0 < x < 1$.

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= \Pr(Y \leq y), \quad \text{for } 1 < y < \infty, \\ &= \Pr(1/X \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(X \geq 1/y) \\ &= \Pr(X > 1/y), \quad (\text{since } X \text{ is continuous}), \\ &= 1 - \Pr(X \leq 1/y) \\ &= 1 - F_X(1/y). \end{aligned}$$

Differentiating with respect to y we then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= \frac{d}{dy} F_Y(y), \quad \text{for } 1 < y < \infty, \\ &= \frac{d}{dy} (1 - F_X(1/y)) \\ &= -F'_X(1/y) \frac{d}{dy} (1/y) \\ &= f_X(1/y) \frac{1}{y^2}. \end{aligned}$$

We then have that

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{y^2} & \text{if } 1 < y < \infty \\ 0 & \text{if } y \leq 1. \end{cases}$$

Next, compute

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |y|f_Y(y) \, dy &= \int_1^{\infty} |y|\frac{1}{y^2} \, dy \\ &= \lim_{b \rightarrow \infty} \int_1^b \frac{1}{y} \, dy \\ &= \lim_{b \rightarrow \infty} \ln b = \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |y|f_Y(y) \, dy = \infty.$$

Consequently, $Y = 1/X$ has no expectation.

Definition 5.1.6 (Expected Value of a Discrete Random Variable). Let X be a discrete random variable with pmf p_X . If

$$\sum_x |x|p_X(x) < \infty,$$

we define the **expected value of X** , denoted $E(X)$, by

$$E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot p_X(x).$$

Thus, if X has a finite set of possible values, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n , and pmf p_X , then the expected value of X is

$$E(X) = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k \cdot p_X(x_k).$$

On the other hand if X takes on a sequence of values, x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots , then the expected value of X exists provided that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |x_k|p_X(x_k) < \infty. \quad (5.1)$$

If (5.1) holds true, then

$$E(X) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k \cdot p_X(x_k).$$

Example 5.1.7. Let X denote the number on the top face of a balanced die. Compute $E(X)$.

Solution: In this case the pmf of X is $p_X(x) = 1/6$ for $x = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$, zero elsewhere. Then,

$$E(X) = \sum_{k=1}^6 k p_X(k) = \sum_{k=1}^6 k \cdot \frac{1}{6} = \frac{7}{2} = 3.5.$$

□

Definition 5.1.8 (Bernoulli Trials). A **Bernoulli Trial**, X , is a discrete random variable that takes on only the values of 0 and 1. The event $(X = 1)$ is called a “success”, while $(X = 0)$ is called a “failure.” The probability of a success is denoted by p , where $0 < p < 1$. We then have that the pmf of X is

$$p_X(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - p & \text{if } x = 0, \\ p & \text{if } x = 1, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

If a discrete random variable X has this pmf, we write

$$X \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p),$$

and say that X is a Bernoulli trial with parameter p .

Example 5.1.9. Let $X \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p)$. Compute $E(X)$.

Solution: Compute $E(X) = 0 \cdot p_X(0) + 1 \cdot p_X(1) = p$. □

Example 5.1.10 (Expected Value of a Geometric Distribution). Imagine an experiment consisting of performing a sequence of independent Bernoulli trials with parameter p , with $0 < p < 1$, until a 1 is obtained. Let X denote the number of trials until the first 1 is obtained. Then X is a discrete random variable with pmf

$$p_X(k) = \begin{cases} (1 - p)^{k-1}p, & \text{for } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases} \quad (5.2)$$

To see how (5.2) comes about, note that $X = k$, for $k > 1$, if there are $k - 1$ zeros before the k^{th} one, and the outcomes of the trials are independent. Thus, in order to show that X has an expected value, we need to check that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k(1 - p)^{k-1}p < \infty. \quad (5.3)$$

Observe that

$$\frac{d}{dp}[(1 - p)^k] = -k(1 - p)^{k-1};$$

thus, the sum in (5.3) can be rewritten as

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k(1 - p)^{k-1}p = -p \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dp}[(1 - p)^k] \quad (5.4)$$

Interchanging the differentiation and the summation in (5.4) we have that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k(1 - p)^{k-1}p = -p \frac{d}{dp} \left[\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 - p)^k \right]. \quad (5.5)$$

Then, adding up the geometric series on the right-hand side of (5.5),

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k(1-p)^{k-1}p = -p \frac{d}{dp} \left[\frac{1-p}{1-(1-p)} \right],$$

from which we get that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k(1-p)^{k-1}p = -p \frac{d}{dp} \left[\frac{1}{p} - 1 \right] = -p \cdot \left[-\frac{1}{p^2} \right] = \frac{1}{p} < \infty.$$

We have therefore demonstrated that, if $X \sim \text{Geometric}(p)$, with $0 < p < 1$, then $E(X)$ exists and

$$E(X) = \frac{1}{p}.$$

Definition 5.1.11 (Independent Discrete Random Variable). Two discrete random variables X and Y are said to independent if and only if

$$\Pr(X = x, Y = y) = \Pr(X = x) \cdot \Pr(Y = y)$$

for all values, x , of X and all values, y , of Y .

Note: the event $(X = x, Y = y)$ denotes the event $(X = x) \cap (Y = y)$; that is, the events $(X = x)$ and $(Y = y)$ occur jointly.

Example 5.1.12. Suppose $X_1 \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p)$ and $X_2 \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p)$ are independent random variables with $0 < p < 1$. Define $Y_2 = X_1 + X_2$. Find the pmf for Y_2 and compute $E(Y_2)$.

Solution: Observe that Y_2 takes on the values 0, 1 and 2. We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_2 = 0) &= \Pr(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 0) \\ &= \Pr(X_1 = 0) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = 0), \quad \text{by independence,} \\ &= (1-p) \cdot (1-p) \\ &= (1-p)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Next, since the event $(Y_2 = 1)$ consists of the disjoint union of the events $(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 0)$ and $(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 1)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_2 = 1) &= \Pr(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 0) + \Pr(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 1) \\ &= \Pr(X_1 = 1) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = 0) + \Pr(X_1 = 0) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = 1) \\ &= p(1-p) + (1-p)p \\ &= 2p(1-p). \end{aligned}$$

Finally,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_2 = 2) &= \Pr(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 1) \\ &= \Pr(X_1 = 1) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = 1) \\ &= p \cdot p \\ &= p^2. \end{aligned}$$

We then have that the pmf of Y_2 is given by

$$p_{Y_2}(y) = \begin{cases} (1-p)^2 & \text{if } y = 0, \\ 2p(1-p) & \text{if } y = 1, \\ p^2 & \text{if } y = 2, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

To find $E(Y_2)$, compute

$$\begin{aligned} E(Y_2) &= 0 \cdot p_{Y_2}(0) + 1 \cdot p_{Y_2}(1) + 2 \cdot p_{Y_2}(2) \\ &= 2p(1-p) + 2p^2 \\ &= 2p[(1-p) + p] \\ &= 2p. \end{aligned}$$

□

We shall next consider the case in which we add three mutually independent Bernoulli trials. Before we present this example, we give a precise definition of mutual independence.

Definition 5.1.13 (Mutual Independent Discrete Random Variable). Three discrete random variables X_1 , X_2 and X_3 are said to **mutually independent** if and only if

(i) they are *pair-wise independent*; that is,

$$\Pr(X_i = x_i, X_j = x_j) = \Pr(X_i = x_i) \cdot \Pr(X_j = x_j) \quad \text{for } i \neq j,$$

for all values, x_i , of X_i and all values, x_j , of X_j ;

(ii) and

$$\Pr(X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2, X_3 = x_3) = \Pr(X_1 = x_1) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = x_2) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = x_3).$$

Lemma 5.1.14. *Let X_1 , X_2 and X_3 be mutually independent, discrete random variables and define $Y_2 = X_1 + X_2$. Then, Y_2 and X_3 are independent.*

Proof: Compute

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_2 = w, X_3 = z) &= \Pr(X_1 + X_2 = w, X_3 = z) \\ &= \sum_x \Pr(X_1 = x, X_2 = w - x, X_3 = z), \end{aligned}$$

where the summation is taken over possible value of X_1 . It then follows that

$$\Pr(Y_2 = w, X_3 = z) = \sum_x \Pr(X_1 = x) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = w - x) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = z),$$

where we have used (ii) in Definition 5.1.13. Thus, by pairwise independence, (i.e., (i) in Definition 5.1.13),

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_2 = w, X_3 = z) &= \left(\sum_x \Pr(X_1 = x) \cdot \Pr(X_2 = w - x) \right) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = z) \\ &= \Pr(X_1 + X_2 = w) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = z) \\ &= \Pr(Y_2 = w) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = z), \end{aligned}$$

which shows the independence of Y_2 and X_3 . \square

Example 5.1.15. Suppose X_1 , X_2 and X_3 be three mutually independent Bernoulli random variables with parameter p , where $0 < p < 1$. Define $Y_3 = X_1 + X_2 + X_3$. Find the pmf for Y_3 and compute $E(Y_3)$.

Solution: Observe that Y_3 takes on the values 0, 1, 2 and 3, and that

$$Y_3 = Y_2 + X_3,$$

where the pmf and expected value of Y_2 were computed in Example 5.1.12.

We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_3 = 0) &= \Pr(Y_2 = 0, X_3 = 0) \\ &= \Pr(Y_2 = 0) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 0), \text{ by independence (Lemma 5.1.14),} \\ &= (1 - p)^2 \cdot (1 - p) \\ &= (1 - p)^3. \end{aligned}$$

Next, since the event $(Y_3 = 1)$ consists of the disjoint union of the events $(Y_2 = 1, X_3 = 0)$ and $(Y_2 = 0, X_3 = 1)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_3 = 1) &= \Pr(Y_2 = 1, X_3 = 0) + \Pr(Y_2 = 0, X_3 = 1) \\ &= \Pr(Y_2 = 1) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 0) + \Pr(Y_2 = 0) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 1) \\ &= 2p(1 - p)(1 - p) + (1 - p)^2 p \\ &= 3p(1 - p)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_3 = 2) &= \Pr(Y_2 = 2, X_3 = 0) + \Pr(Y_2 = 1, X_3 = 1) \\ &= \Pr(Y_2 = 2) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 0) + \Pr(Y_2 = 1) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 1) \\ &= p^2(1 - p) + 2p(1 - p)p \\ &= 3p^2(1 - p), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_3 = 3) &= \Pr(Y_2 = 2, X_3 = 1) \\ &= \Pr(Y_2 = 0) \cdot \Pr(X_3 = 0) \\ &= p^2 \cdot p \\ &= p^3. \end{aligned}$$

We then have that the pmf of Y_3 is

$$p_{Y_3}(y) = \begin{cases} (1-p)^3 & \text{if } y = 0, \\ 3p(1-p)^2 & \text{if } y = 1, \\ 3p^2(1-p) & \text{if } y = 2, \\ p^3 & \text{if } y = 3, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

To find $E(Y_2)$, compute

$$\begin{aligned} E(Y_3) &= 0 \cdot p_{Y_3}(0) + 1 \cdot p_{Y_3}(1) + 2 \cdot p_{Y_3}(2) + 3 \cdot p_{Y_3}(3) \\ &= 3p(1-p)^2 + 2 \cdot 3p^2(1-p) + 3p^3 \\ &= 3p[(1-p)^2 + 2p(1-p) + p^2] \\ &= 3p[(1-p) + p]^2 \\ &= 3p. \end{aligned}$$

□

If we go through the calculations in Examples 5.1.12 and 5.1.15 for the case of four mutually independent¹ Bernoulli trials with parameter p , where $0 < p < 1$, X_1, X_2, X_3 and X_4 , we obtain that for $Y_4 = X_1 + X_2 + X_3 + X_4$,

$$p_{Y_4}(y) = \begin{cases} (1-p)^4 & \text{if } y = 0, \\ 4p(1-p)^3 & \text{if } y = 1, \\ 6p^2(1-p)^2 & \text{if } y = 2 \\ 4p^3(1-p) & \text{if } y = 3 \\ p^4 & \text{if } y = 4, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases}$$

and

$$E(Y_4) = 4p.$$

Observe that the terms in the expressions for $p_{Y_2}(y)$, $p_{Y_3}(y)$ and $p_{Y_4}(y)$ are the terms in the expansion of $[(1-p) + p]^n$ for $n = 2, 3$ and 4 , respectively. By the Binomial Expansion Theorem,

$$[(1-p) + p]^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k},$$

where

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

¹Here, not only do we require that the random variable be pairwise independent, but also that for any group of $k \geq 2$ events $(X_j = x_j)$, the probability of their intersection is the product of their probabilities.

are the called the **binomial coefficients**. This suggests that if

$$Y_n = X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n,$$

where X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are n mutually independent Bernoulli trials with parameter p , for $0 < p < 1$, then

$$p_{Y_n}(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Furthermore,

$$E(Y_n) = np.$$

We shall establish this as a the following Theorem:

Theorem 5.1.16. *Assume that X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are mutually independent Bernoulli trials with parameter p , with $0 < p < 1$. Define*

$$Y_n = X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n.$$

Then the pmf of Y_n is

$$p_{Y_n}(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

and

$$E(Y_n) = np.$$

Proof: We prove this result by induction on n . For $n = 1$ we have that $Y_1 = X_1$, and therefore

$$p_{Y_1}(0) = \Pr(X_1 = 0) = 1 - p$$

and

$$p_{Y_1}(1) = \Pr(X_1 = 1) = p.$$

Thus,

$$p_{Y_1}(k) = \begin{cases} 1-p & \text{if } k = 0, \\ p & \text{if } k = 1, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

Observe that $\binom{1}{0} = \binom{1}{1} = 1$ and therefore the result holds true for $n = 1$.

Next, assume the theorem is true for n ; that is, suppose that

$$p_{Y_n}(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n, \quad (5.6)$$

and that

$$E(Y_n) = np. \quad (5.7)$$

We need to show that the result also holds true for $n + 1$. In other words, we show that if $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n, X_{n+1}$ are mutually independent Bernoulli trials with parameter p , with $0 < p < 1$, and

$$Y_{n+1} = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n + X_{n+1}, \quad (5.8)$$

then, the pmf of Y_{n+1} is

$$p_{Y_{n+1}}(k) = \binom{n+1}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n+1-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n, n+1, \quad (5.9)$$

and

$$E(Y_{n+1}) = (n+1)p. \quad (5.10)$$

From (5.10) we see that

$$Y_{n+1} = Y_n + X_{n+1},$$

where Y_n and X_{n+1} are independent random variables, by an argument similar to the one in the proof of Lemma 5.1.14 since the X_k 's are mutually independent. Therefore, the following calculations are justified:

(i) for $k \leq n$,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_{n+1} = k) &= \Pr(Y_n = k, X_{n+1} = 0) + \Pr(Y_n = k-1, X_{n+1} = 1) \\ &= \Pr(Y_n = k) \cdot \Pr(X_{n+1} = 0) \\ &\quad + \Pr(Y_n = k-1) \cdot \Pr(X_{n+1} = 1) \\ &= \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} (1-p) \\ &\quad + \binom{n}{k-1} p^{k-1} (1-p)^{n-k+1} p, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the inductive hypothesis (5.6). Thus,

$$\Pr(Y_{n+1} = k) = \left[\binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k-1} \right] p^k (1-p)^{n+1-k}.$$

The expression in (5.9) will follow from the fact that

$$\binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k-1} = \binom{n+1}{k},$$

which can be established by the following counting argument:

Imagine $n + 1$ balls in a bag, n of which are blue and one is red. We consider the collection of all groups of k balls that can be formed out of the $n + 1$ balls in the bag. This collection is

made up of two disjoint sub-collections: the ones with the red ball and the ones without the red ball. The number of elements in the collection with the one red ball is

$$\binom{n}{k-1} \cdot \binom{1}{1} = \binom{n}{k-1},$$

while the number of elements in the collection of groups without the red ball are

$$\binom{n}{k}.$$

Adding these two must yield $\binom{n+1}{k}$.

(ii) If $k = n + 1$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Y_{n+1} = k) &= \Pr(Y_n = n, X_{n+1} = 1) \\ &= \Pr(Y_n = n) \cdot \Pr(X_{n+1} = 1) \\ &= p^n p \\ &= p^{n+1} \\ &= \binom{n+1}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n+1-k}, \end{aligned}$$

since $k = n + 1$.

Finally, to establish (5.10) based on (5.7), use the result of Problem 1 in Assignment 10 to show that, since Y_n and X_n are independent,

$$E(Y_{n+1}) = E(Y_n + X_{n+1}) = E(Y_n) + E(X_{n+1}) = np + p = (n+1)p.$$

□

Definition 5.1.17 (Binomial Distribution). Let n be a natural number and $0 < p < 1$. A discrete random variable, X , having pmf

$$p_X(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

is said to have a **binomial distribution** with parameters n and p .

We write $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$.

Remark 5.1.18. In Theorem 5.1.16 we showed that if $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$, then

$$E(X) = np.$$

We also showed in that theorem that the sum of n mutually independent Bernoulli trials with parameter p , for $0 < p < 1$, follows a Binomial distribution with parameters n and p .

Definition 5.1.19 (Independent Identically Distributed Random Variables). A set of random variables, $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n\}$, is said to be **independent identically distributed**, or iid, if the random variables are mutually disjoint and if they all have the same distribution function.

If the random variables X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are iid, then they form a **simple random sample** of size n .

Example 5.1.20. Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be a simple random sample from a Bernoulli(p) distribution, with $0 < p < 1$. Define the **sample mean** \bar{X} by

$$\bar{X} = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n}{n}.$$

Give the distribution function for X and compute $E(\bar{X})$.

Solution: Write $Y = n\bar{X} = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n$. Then, since X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are iid Bernoulli(p) random variables, Theorem 5.1.16 implies that $Y \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$. Consequently, the pmf of Y is

$$p_Y(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

and $E(Y) = np$.

Now, \bar{X} may take on the values $0, \frac{1}{n}, \frac{2}{n}, \dots, \frac{n-1}{n}, 1$, and

$$\Pr(\bar{X} = x) = \Pr(Y = nx) \quad \text{for } x = 0, \frac{1}{n}, \frac{2}{n}, \dots, \frac{n-1}{n}, 1,$$

so that

$$\Pr(\bar{X} = x) = \binom{n}{nx} p^{nx} (1-p)^{n-nx} \quad \text{for } x = 0, \frac{1}{n}, \frac{2}{n}, \dots, \frac{n-1}{n}, 1.$$

The expected value of \bar{X} can be computed as follows

$$E(\bar{X}) = E\left(\frac{1}{n}Y\right) = \frac{1}{n}E(Y) = \frac{1}{n}(np) = p.$$

Observe that \bar{X} is the proportion of successes in the simple random sample. It then follows that the expected proportion of successes in the random sample is p , the probability of a success. \square

5.2 Properties of Expectations

5.2.1 Linearity

We have already mentioned (and used) the fact that

$$E(X + Y) = E(X) + E(Y), \tag{5.11}$$

for the case of independent, discrete random variable X and Y (see Problem 1 in Assignment #10). The expression in (5.11) is true in general, regardless of whether or not X are discrete or independent. This will be shown to be the case in the context of joint distributions in a subsequent section.

We can also verify, using the definition of expected value (see Definition 5.1.1 and) that, for any constant c ,

$$E(cX) = cE(X). \quad (5.12)$$

The expressions in (5.11) and (5.12) say that expectation is a linear operation.

5.2.2 Expectations of Functions of Random Variables

Example 5.2.1. Let X denote a continuous random variable with pdf

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} 3x^2 & \text{if } 0 < x < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Compute the expected value of X^2 .

We show two ways to compute $E(X)$.

- (i) *First Alternative.* Let $Y = X^2$ and compute the pdf of Y . To do this, first we compute the cdf:

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= \Pr(Y \leq y), \quad \text{for } 0 < y < 1, \\ &= \Pr(X^2 \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(|X| \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= \Pr(-\sqrt{y} \leq |X| \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= \Pr(-\sqrt{y} < |X| \leq \sqrt{y}), \quad \text{since } X \text{ is continuous,} \\ &= F_x(\sqrt{y}) - F_x(-\sqrt{y}) \\ &= F_x(\sqrt{y}), \end{aligned}$$

since f_x is 0 for negative values.

It then follows that

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= F'_x(\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{d}{dy}(\sqrt{y}) \\ &= f_x(\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= 3(\sqrt{y})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{y} \end{aligned}$$

for $0 < y < 1$.

Consequently, the pdf for Y is

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{y} & \text{if } 0 < y < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= E(Y) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(y) \, dy \\ &= \int_0^1 y \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{y} \, dy \\ &= \frac{3}{2} \int_0^1 y^{3/2} \, dy \\ &= \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{2}{5} \\ &= \frac{3}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

(ii) *Second Alternative.* Alternatively, we could have compute $E(X^2)$ by evaluating

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f_X(x) \, dx &= \int_0^1 x^2 \cdot 3x^2 \, dx \\ &= \frac{3}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

The fact that both ways of evaluating $E(X^2)$ presented in the previous example is a consequence of the following general result.

Theorem 5.2.2. *Let X be a continuous random variable and g denote a continuous function defined on the range of X . Then, if*

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |g(x)| f_X(x) \, dx &< \infty, \\ E(g(X)) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x) f_X(x) \, dx. \end{aligned}$$

Proof: We prove this result for the special case in which g is differentiable with $g'(x) > 0$ for all x in the range of X . In this case g is strictly increasing and it therefore has an inverse function g^{-1} mapping onto the range of $g \circ X$ and which is also differentiable with derivative given by

$$\frac{d}{dy} [g^{-1}(y)] = \frac{1}{g'(x)} = \frac{1}{g'(g^{-1}(y))},$$

where we have set $y = g(x)$ for all x in the range of X , or $Y = g(X)$. Assume also that the values of X range from $-\infty$ to ∞ and those of Y also range from $-\infty$ to ∞ . Thus, using the Change of Variables Theorem, we have that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f_X(x) \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} yf_X(g^{-1}(y)) \cdot \frac{1}{g'(g^{-1}(y))} \, dy,$$

since $x = g^{-1}(y)$ and therefore

$$dx = \frac{d}{dy} [g^{-1}(y)] \, dy = \frac{1}{g'(g^{-1}(y))} \, dy.$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= \Pr(Y \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(g(X) \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(X \leq g^{-1}(y)) \\ &= F_X(g^{-1}(y)), \end{aligned}$$

from which we obtain, by the Chain Rule, that

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(g^{-1}(y)) \frac{1}{g'(g^{-1}(y))}.$$

Consequently,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} yf_Y(y) \, dy = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f_X(x) \, dx,$$

or

$$E(Y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f_X(x) \, dx.$$

□

Theorem 5.2.2 also applies to functions of a discrete random variable. In this case we have

Theorem 5.2.3. *Let X be a discrete random variable with pmf p_X , and let g denote a function defined on the range of X . Then, if*

$$\sum_x |g(x)|p_X(x) < \infty,$$

$$E(g(X)) = \sum_x g(x)p_X(x).$$

5.3 Moments

Theorems 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 can be used to evaluate the expected values of powers of a random variable

$$E(X^m) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^m f_X(x) \, dx, \quad m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

in the continuous case, provided that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x|^m f_X(x) \, dx < \infty, \quad m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

In the discrete case we have

$$E(X^m) = \sum_x x^m p_X(x), \quad m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

provided that

$$\sum_x |x|^m p_X(x) < \infty, \quad m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Definition 5.3.1 (*m*th Moment of a Distribution). $E(X^m)$, if it exists, is called the *m*th moment of X for $m = 0, 2, 3, \dots$

Observe that the first moment of X is its expectation.

Example 5.3.2. Let X have a uniform distribution over the interval (a, b) for $a < b$. Compute the second moment of X .

Solution: Using Theorem 5.2.2 we get

$$E(X^2) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f_X(x) \, dx,$$

where

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b-a} & \text{if } a < x < b, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} E(X^2) &= \int_a^b \frac{x^2}{b-a} \, dx \\ &= \left[\frac{1}{b-a} \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_a^b \\ &= \frac{1}{3(b-a)} \cdot (b^3 - a^3) \\ &= \frac{b^2 + ab + a^2}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

□

5.3.1 Moment Generating Function

Using Theorems 5.2.2 or 5.2.3 we can also evaluate $E(e^{tX})$ whenever this expectation is defined.

Example 5.3.3. Let X have an exponential distribution with parameter $\beta > 0$. Determine the values of $t \in \mathbb{R}$ for which $E(e^{tX})$ is defined and compute it.

Solution: The pdf of X is given by

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\beta} e^{-x/\beta} & \text{if } x > 0, \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0. \end{cases}$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} E(e^{tX}) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{tx} f_X(x) \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\beta} \int_0^{\infty} e^{tx} e^{-x/\beta} \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\beta} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-[(1/\beta)-t]x} \, dx. \end{aligned}$$

We note that for the integral in the last equation to converge, we must require that

$$t < 1/\beta.$$

For these values of t we get that

$$\begin{aligned} E(e^{tX}) &= \frac{1}{\beta} \cdot \frac{1}{(1/\beta) - t} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - \beta t}. \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 5.3.4 (Moment Generating Function). Given a random variable X , the expectation $E(e^{tX})$, for those values of t for which it is defined, is called the **moment generating function**, or mgf, of X , and is denoted by $\psi_X(t)$. We then have that

$$\psi_X(t) = E(e^{tX}),$$

whenever the expectation is defined.

Example 5.3.5. If $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta)$, for $\beta > 0$, then Example 5.3.3 shows that the mgf of X is given by

$$\psi_X(t) = \frac{1}{1 - \beta t} \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}.$$

Example 5.3.6. Let $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$, for $n \geq 1$ and $0 < p < 1$. Compute the mgf of X .

Solution: The pmf of X is

$$p_X(k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

and therefore, by the law of the unconscious statistician,

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_X(t) &= E(e^{tX}) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^n e^{tk} p_X(k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^n (e^t)^k \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} (pe^t)^k (1-p)^{n-k} \\ &= (pe^t + 1 - p)^n, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the Binomial Theorem.

We therefore have that if X is binomially distributed with parameters n and p , then its mgf is given by

$$\psi_X(t) = (1 - p + pe^t)^n \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

□

5.3.2 Properties of Moment Generating Functions

First observe that for any random variable X ,

$$\psi_X(0) = E(e^{0 \cdot X}) = E(1) = 1.$$

The importance of the moment generating function stems from the fact that, if $\psi_X(t)$ is defined over some interval around $t = 0$, then it is infinitely differentiable in that interval and its derivatives at $t = 0$ yield the moments of X . More precisely, in the continuous cases, the m -th order derivative of ψ_X at t is given by

$$\psi^{(m)}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^m e^{tx} f_X(x) \, dx, \quad \text{for all } m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

and all t in the interval around 0 where these derivatives are defined. It then follows that

$$\psi^{(m)}(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^m f_X(x) \, dx = E(X^m), \quad \text{for all } m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Example 5.3.7. Let $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta)$. Compute the second moment of X .

Solution: From Example 5.3.5 we have that

$$\psi_x(t) = \frac{1}{1 - \beta t} \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}.$$

Differentiating with respect to t we obtain

$$\psi'_x(t) = \frac{\beta}{(1 - \beta t)^2} \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}$$

and

$$\psi''_x(t) = \frac{2\beta^2}{(1 - \beta t)^3} \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}.$$

It then follows that $E(X^2) = \psi''_x(0) = 2\beta^2$. \square

Example 5.3.8. Let $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$. Compute the second moment of X .

Solution: From Example 5.3.6 we have that

$$\psi_x(t) = (1 - p + pe^t)^n \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Differentiating with respect to t we obtain

$$\psi'_x(t) = npe^t(1 - p + pe^t)^{n-1}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \psi''_x(t) &= npe^t(1 - p + pe^t)^{n-1} + npe^t(n-1)pe^t(1 - p + pe^t)^{n-2} \\ &= npe^t(1 - p + pe^t)^{n-1} + n(n-1)p^2e^{2t}(1 - p + pe^t)^{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

It then follows that $E(X^2) = \psi''_x(0) = np + n(n-1)p^2$. \square

A very important property of moment generating functions is the fact that ψ_x , if it exists in some open interval around 0, completely determines the distribution of the random variable X . This fact is known as the Uniqueness Theorem for Moment Generating Functions.

Theorem 5.3.9 (Uniqueness of Moment Generating Functions). *Let X and Y denote two random variables with moment generating functions ψ_x and ψ_y , respectively. Suppose that there exists $\delta > 0$ such $\psi_x(t) = \psi_y(t)$ for $-\delta < t < \delta$. Then, X and Y have the same cumulative distribution functions; that is,*

$$F_x(x) = F_y(x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

A proof of this result may be found in an article by J. H. Curtiss in *The Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, Vol. 13, No. 4, (Dec., 1942), pp. 430-433.

We present an example of an application of Theorem 5.3.9

Example 5.3.10. Suppose that X is a random variable with mgf

$$\psi_x(t) = \frac{1}{1 - 2t}, \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{2}. \quad (5.13)$$

Compute $\Pr(X > 2)$.

Solution: Since the function in (5.13) gives the mgf of an Exponential(2) distribution, by the Uniqueness of Moment Generating Functions X must have an exponential distribution with parameter 2; so that

$$F_X(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-x/2}, & \text{for } x > 0; \\ 0, & \text{for } x \leq 0. \end{cases}$$

Thus, $\Pr(X > 2) = 1 - F_X(2) = e^{-1}$. \square

Example 5.3.11. Let x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n denote real values. Let p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n denote positive values satisfying

$$\sum_{k=1}^n p_k = 1.$$

Then, the function $\psi_X : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$\psi_X(t) = p_1 e^{x_1 t} + p_2 e^{x_2 t} + \dots + p_n e^{x_n t}, \quad \text{for } t \in \mathbb{R},$$

defines the mgf of a discrete random variable, X , with pmf

$$p_X(x) = \begin{cases} p_k, & \text{if } x = x_k, \text{ for } k = 1, 2, \dots, n; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases}$$

Example 5.3.12. Let β be a positive parameter and $a \in \mathbb{R}$. Find the distribution of a random variable, Y , with mgf

$$\psi_Y(t) = \frac{e^{at}}{1 - \beta t}, \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (5.14)$$

Solution: By the result in Example 5.3.5, if $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta)$, the X has mgf

$$\psi_X(t) = \frac{1}{1 - \beta t}, \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (5.15)$$

Consider the random variable $Z = X + a$ and compute

$$\psi_Z(t) = E(e^{tZ}),$$

to get

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_Z(t) &= E(e^{t(X+a)}) \\ &= E(e^{tX+at}) \\ &= E(e^{at} e^{tX}); \end{aligned}$$

so that, using the linearity of the expectation,

$$\psi_Z(t) = e^{at} E(e^{tX}),$$

or

$$\psi_z(t) = e^{at}\psi_x(t), \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (5.16)$$

It then follows from (5.15) and (5.16) that

$$\psi_z(t) = \frac{e^{at}}{1 - \beta t}, \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (5.17)$$

Comparing (5.14) and (5.17), we see that

$$\psi_Y(t) = \psi_Z(t), \quad \text{for } t < \frac{1}{\beta};$$

consequently, by the Uniqueness Theorem for mgf, Y and $Z = X + a$ have the same cdf. We then have that

$$F_Y(y) = F_{X+a}(y), \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus, for $y \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\begin{aligned} F_Y(y) &= \Pr(X + a \leq y) \\ &= \Pr(X \leq y - a) \\ &= F_X(y - a). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the pdf of Y is

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(y - a),$$

or

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\beta} e^{-(y-a)/\beta}, & \text{if } y > a; \\ 0, & \text{if } y \leq a. \end{cases}$$

Figure 5.3.1 shows a sketch of the graph of the pdf of Y for the case $\beta = 1$. \square

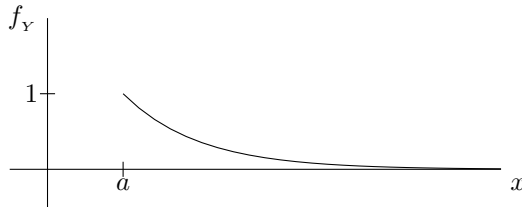


Figure 5.3.1: Sketch of graph of f_Y

5.4 Variance

Given a random variable X for which an expectation exists, define

$$\mu = E(X).$$

μ is usually referred to as the **mean** of the random variable X . For given $m = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, if $E(|X - \mu|^m) < \infty$,

$$E[(X - \mu)^m]$$

is called the m **th central moment** of X . The second central moment of X ,

$$E[(X - \mu)^2],$$

if it exists, is called the **variance** of X and is denoted by $\text{Var}(X)$. We then have that

$$\text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2],$$

provided that the expectation and second moment of X exist. The variance of X measures the **average square deviation** of the distribution of X from its mean. Thus,

$$\sqrt{E[(X - \mu)^2]}$$

is a measure of deviation from the mean. It is usually denoted by σ and is called the **standard deviation** from the mean. We then have

$$\text{Var}(X) = \sigma^2.$$

We can compute the variance of a random variable X as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Var}(X) &= E[(X - \mu)^2] \\ &= E(X^2 - 2\mu X + \mu^2) \\ &= E(X^2) - 2\mu E(X) + \mu^2 E(1) \\ &= E(X^2) - 2\mu \cdot \mu + \mu^2 \\ &= E(X^2) - \mu^2. \end{aligned}$$

Example 5.4.1. Let $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\beta)$. Compute the variance of X .

Solution: In this case $\mu = E(X) = \beta$ and, from Example 5.3.7, $E(X^2) = 2\beta^2$. Consequently,

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2 = 2\beta^2 - \beta^2 = \beta^2.$$

□

Example 5.4.2. Let $X \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$. Compute the variance of X .

Solution: Here, $\mu = np$ and, from Example 5.3.8,

$$E(X^2) = np + n(n-1)p^2.$$

Thus,

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2 = np + n(n-1)p^2 - n^2p^2 = np(1-p).$$

□

Chapter 6

Joint Distributions

When studying the outcomes of experiments more than one measurement (random variable) may be obtained. For example, when studying traffic flow, we might be interested in the number of cars that go past a point per minute, as well as the mean speed of the cars counted. We might also be interested in the spacing between consecutive cars, and the relative speeds of the two cars. For this reason, we are interested in probability statements concerning two or more random variables.

6.1 Definition of Joint Distribution

In order to deal with probabilities for events involving more than one random variable, we need to define their **joint distribution**. We begin with the case of two random variables X and Y .

Definition 6.1.1 (Joint cumulative distribution function). Given random variables X and Y , the **joint cumulative distribution function** of X and Y is defined by

$$F_{(X,Y)}(x,y) = \Pr(X \leq x, Y \leq y) \quad \text{for all } (x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

When both X and Y are discrete random variables, it is more convenient to talk about the **joint probability mass function** of X and Y :

$$p_{(X,Y)}(x,y) = \Pr(X = x, Y = y).$$

We have already talked about the joint distribution of two discrete random variables in the case in which they are independent. Here is an example in which X and Y are not independent:

Example 6.1.2. Suppose three chips are randomly selected from a bowl containing 3 red, 4 white, and 5 blue chips.

Let X denote the number of red chips chosen, and Y be the number of white chips chosen. We would like to compute the joint probability function of X and Y ; that is,

$$\Pr(X = x, Y = y),$$

where x and y range over 0, 1, 2 and 3.

For instance,

$$\Pr(X = 0, Y = 0) = \frac{\binom{5}{3}}{\binom{12}{3}} = \frac{10}{220} = \frac{1}{22},$$

$$\Pr(X = 0, Y = 1) = \frac{\binom{4}{1} \cdot \binom{5}{2}}{\binom{12}{3}} = \frac{40}{220} = \frac{2}{11},$$

$$\Pr(X = 1, Y = 1) = \frac{\binom{3}{1} \cdot \binom{4}{1} \cdot \binom{5}{1}}{\binom{12}{3}} = \frac{60}{220} = \frac{3}{11},$$

and so on for all 16 of the joint probabilities. These probabilities are more easily expressed in tabular form:

$X \setminus Y$	0	1	2	3	Row Sums
0	1/22	2/11	3/22	2/110	21/55
1	3/22	3/11	9/110	0	27/55
2	3/42	3/55	0	0	27/220
3	1/220	0	0	0	1/220
Column Sums	14/55	28/55	12/55	1/55	1

Table 6.1: Joint Probability Distribution for X and Y , $p_{(X,Y)}$

Notice that pmf's for the individual random variables X and Y can be obtained as follows:

$$p_X(i) = \sum_{j=0}^3 P(i, j) \leftarrow \text{adding up } i^{\text{th}} \text{ row}$$

for $i = 1, 2, 3$, and

$$p_Y(j) = \sum_{i=0}^3 P(i, j) \leftarrow \text{adding up } j^{\text{th}} \text{ column}$$

for $j = 1, 2, 3$.

These are expressed in Table 6.1 as “row sums” and “column sums,” respectively, on the “margins” of the table. For this reason p_X and p_Y are usually called **marginal distributions**.

Observe that, for instance,

$$0 = \Pr(X = 3, Y = 1) \neq p_X(3) \cdot p_Y(1) = \frac{1}{220} \cdot \frac{28}{55},$$

and therefore X and Y are not independent.

Definition 6.1.3 (Joint Probability Density Function). An integrable function $f: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is said to be a **joint pdf** of the continuous random variables X and Y iff

- (i) $f(x, y) \geq 0$ for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, and
- (ii) $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x, y) \, dx dy = 1$.

Example 6.1.4. Consider the disk of radius 1 centered at the origin,

$$D_1 = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 < 1\}.$$

The uniform joint distribution for the disc is given by the function

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\pi} & \text{if } x^2 + y^2 < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

This is the joint pdf for two random variables, X and Y , since

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x, y) \, dx dy = \iint_{D_1} \frac{1}{\pi} \, dx dy = \frac{1}{\pi} \cdot \text{area}(D_1) = 1,$$

since $\text{area}(D_1) = \pi$.

This pdf models a situation in which the random variables X and Y denote the coordinates of a point on the unit disk chosen at random.

If X and Y are continuous random variables with joint pdf $f_{(X,Y)}$, then the joint cumulative distribution function, $F_{(X,Y)}$, is given by

$$F_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = \Pr(X \leq x, Y \leq y) = \int_{-\infty}^x \int_{-\infty}^y f_{(X,Y)}(u, v) \, dv du,$$

for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$.

Given the joint pdf, $f_{(X,Y)}$, of two random variables defined on the same sample space, \mathcal{C} , we can compute the probability of events of the form

$$((X, Y) \in A) = \{c \in \mathcal{C} \mid (X(c), Y(c)) \in A\},$$

where A is a Borel subset¹ of \mathbb{R}^2 , is computed as follows

$$\Pr((X, Y) \in A) = \iint_A f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) \, dx dy.$$

¹Borel sets in \mathbb{R}^2 are generated by bounded open disks; i.e., the sets

$$\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid (x - x_o)^2 + (y - y_o)^2 < r^2\},$$

where $(x_o, y_o) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $r > 0$.

Example 6.1.5. A point is chosen at random from the open unit disk D_1 . Compute the probability that the sum of its coordinates is bigger than 1.

Solution: Let (X, Y) denote the coordinates of a point drawn at random from the unit disk $D_1 = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 < 1\}$. Then the joint pdf of X and Y is the one given in Example 6.1.4; that is,

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\pi} & \text{if } x^2 + y^2 < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We wish to compute $\Pr(X + Y > 1)$. This is given by

$$\Pr(X + Y > 1) = \iint_A f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) \, dx dy,$$

where

$$A = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 < 1, x + y > 1\}.$$

The set A is sketched in Figure 6.1.1.

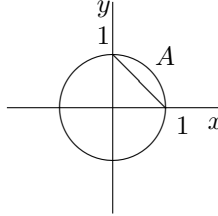


Figure 6.1.1: Sketch of region A

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(X + Y > 1) &= \iint_A \frac{1}{\pi} \, dx dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \text{area}(A) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{1}{2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2\pi} \approx 0.09, \end{aligned}$$

Since the area of A is the area of one quarter of that of the disk minus the area of the triangle with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(1, 0)$ and $(0, 1)$. \square

6.2 Marginal Distributions

We have seen that if X and Y are discrete random variables with joint pmf $p_{(X,Y)}$, then the marginal distributions are given by

$$p_X(x) = \sum_y p_{(X,Y)}(x, y),$$

and

$$p_Y(y) = \sum_x p_{(X,Y)}(x, y),$$

where the sums are taken over all possible values of y and x , respectively.

We can define marginal distributions for continuous random variables X and Y from their joint pdf in an analogous way:

$$f_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) dy$$

and

$$f_Y(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) dx.$$

Example 6.2.1. Let X and Y have joint pdf given by

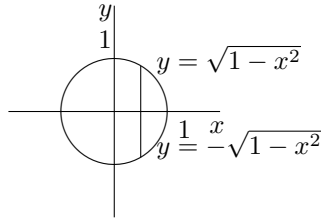
$$f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\pi} & \text{if } x^2 + y^2 < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then, the marginal distribution of X is given by

$$f_X(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) dy = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\sqrt{1-x^2}}^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dy = \frac{2}{\pi} \sqrt{1-x^2} \text{ for } -1 < x < 1$$

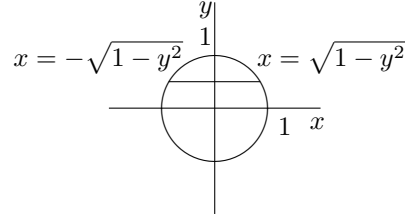
and

$$f_X(x) = 0 \text{ for } |x| \geq 1.$$



Similarly,

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\pi} \sqrt{1-y^2} & \text{if } |y| < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } |y| \geq 1. \end{cases}$$



Observe that, in the previous example,

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) \neq f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y),$$

since

$$\text{Since } \frac{1}{\pi} \neq \frac{4}{\pi^2} \sqrt{1-x^2} \sqrt{1-y^2},$$

for (x,y) in the unit disk. We then say that X and Y are not independent.

Example 6.2.2. Let X and Y denote the coordinates of a point selected at random from the unit disc and set $Z = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$

Compute the cdf for Z , $F_Z(z)$ for $0 < z < 1$ and the expectation of Z .

Solution: The joint pdf of X and Y is given by

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\pi} & \text{if } x^2 + y^2 < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(Z \leq z) &= \Pr(X^2 + Y^2 \leq z^2), \quad \text{for } 0 < z < 1, \\ &= \iint_{X^2 + Y^2 \leq z^2} f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) \, dy \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^z r \, dr \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} (2\pi) \frac{r^2}{2} \Big|_0^z \\ &= z^2, \end{aligned}$$

where we changed to polar coordinates. Thus,

$$F_Z(z) = z^2, \quad \text{for } 0 < z < 1.$$

Note that, for $z \leq 0$ or $z \geq 1$, $F_Z(z) = 1$. Consequently,

$$f_Z(z) = \begin{cases} 2z, & \text{if } 0 < z < 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus, computing the expectation,

$$\begin{aligned} E(Z) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} z f_Z(z) \, dz \\ &= \int_0^1 z(2z) \, dz \\ &= \int_0^1 2z^2 \, dz = \frac{2}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

□

Observe that we could have obtained the answer in the previous example by computing

$$\begin{aligned} E(D) &= E(\sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}) \\ &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) \, dx dy \\ &= \iint_A \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \frac{1}{\pi} \, dx dy, \end{aligned}$$

where $A = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x^2 + y^2 < 1\}$. Thus, using polar coordinates again, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} E(D) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^1 r \, r dr d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} 2\pi \int_0^1 r^2 \, dr \\ &= \frac{2}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

This is the bivariate version of Theorem 5.2.2; namely,

$$E[g(X, Y)] = \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} g(x, y) f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) \, dx dy,$$

for any integrable function g of two variables for which

$$\iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} |g(x, y)| f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) \, dx dy < \infty.$$

Theorem 6.2.3. *Let X and Y denote continuous random variable with joint pdf $f_{(X,Y)}$. Then,*

$$E(X + Y) = E(X) + E(Y).$$

In this theorem,

$$E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f_X(x) \, dx,$$

and

$$E(Y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(x) \, dy,$$

where f_X and f_Y are the marginal distributions of X and Y , respectively.

Proof of Theorem.

$$\begin{aligned} E(X + Y) &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} (x + y) f_{(X,Y)} \, dx dy \\ &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} x f_{(X,Y)} \, dx dy + \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} y f_{(X,Y)} \, dx dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f_{(X,Y)} \, dy dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_{(X,Y)} \, dx dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{(X,Y)} \, dy dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{(X,Y)} \, dx dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f_X(x) \, dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(y) \, dy \\ &= E(X) + E(Y). \end{aligned}$$

□

6.3 Independent Random Variables

Two random variables X and Y are said to be independent if for any events A and B in \mathbb{R} (e.g., Borel sets),

$$\Pr((X, Y) \in A \times B) = \Pr(X \in A) \cdot \Pr(Y \in B),$$

where $A \times B$ denotes the Cartesian product of A and B :

$$A \times B = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x \in A \text{ and } y \in B\}.$$

In terms of cumulative distribution functions, this translates into

$$F_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = F_X(x) \cdot F_Y(y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \quad (6.1)$$

We have seen that, in the case in which X and Y are discrete, independence of X and Y is equivalent to

$$p_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = p_X(x) \cdot p_Y(y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

For continuous random variables we have the analogous expression in terms of pdfs:

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x, y) = f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \quad (6.2)$$

This follows by taking second partial derivatives on the expression (6.1) for the cdfs since

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) = \frac{\partial^2 F_{(X,Y)}(x,y)}{\partial x \partial y}(x,y)$$

for points (x,y) at which $f_{(X,Y)}$ is continuous, by the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus.

Hence, knowing that X and Y are independent and knowing the corresponding marginal pdfs, in the case in which X and Y are continuous, allows us to compute their joint pdf by using Equation (6.2).

Proposition 6.3.1. *Let X and Y be independent random variables. Then*

$$E(XY) = E(X) \cdot E(Y). \quad (6.3)$$

Proof: We prove (6.3) for the special case in which X and Y are both continuous random variables.

If X and Y are independent, it follows that their joint pdf is given by

$$f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) = f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y), \quad \text{for } (x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

we then have that

$$\begin{aligned} E(XY) &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} xy f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) \, dx dy \\ &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} xy f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) \, dx dy \\ &= \iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} x f_X(x) \cdot y f_Y(y) \, dx dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(y) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f_X(x) \, dx \, dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(y) E(X) \, dy, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the definition of $E(X)$. We then have that

$$E(XY) = E(X) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y f_Y(y) \, dy = E(X) \cdot E(Y).$$

□

Example 6.3.2. A line segment of unit length is divided into three pieces by selecting two points at random and independently and then cutting the segment at the two selected points. Compute the probability that the three pieces will form a triangle.

Solution: Let X and Y denote the the coordinates of the selected points. We may assume that X and Y are uniformly distributed over $(0, 1)$ and independent. We then have that

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < y < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Consequently, the joint distribution of X and Y is

$$f_{(X,Y)} = f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 < x < 1, 0 < y < 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

If $X < Y$, the three pieces of length X , $Y - X$ and $1 - Y$ will form a triangle if and only if the following three conditions derived from the triangle inequality hold (see Figure 6.3.2):

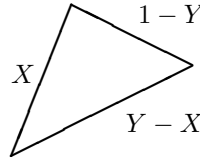


Figure 6.3.2: Random Triangle

$$X \leq Y - X + 1 - Y \Rightarrow X \leq 1/2,$$

$$Y - X \leq X + 1 - Y \Rightarrow Y \leq X + 1/2,$$

and

$$1 - Y \leq X + Y - X \Rightarrow Y \geq 1/2.$$

Similarly, if $X > Y$, a triangle is formed if

$$Y \leq 1/2,$$

$$Y \geq X - 1/2,$$

and

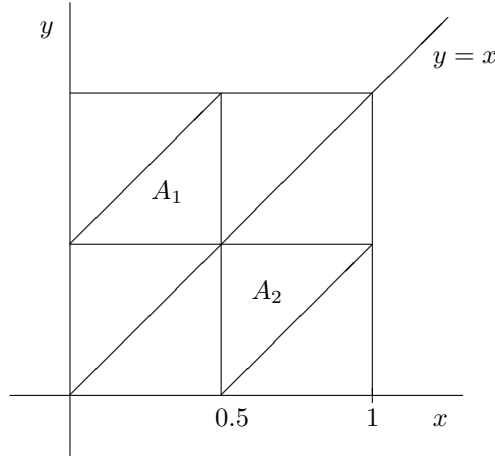
$$X \geq 1/2.$$

Thus, the event that a triangle is formed is the disjoint union of the events

$$A_1 = (X < Y, X \leq 1/2, Y \leq X + 1/2, Y \geq 1/2)$$

and

$$A_2 = (X > Y, Y \leq 1/2, Y \geq X - 1/2, X \geq 1/2).$$

Figure 6.3.3: Sketch of events A_1 and A_2

These are pictured in Figure 6.3.3:

We then have that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pr(\text{triangle}) &= \Pr(A_1 \cup A_2) \\
 &= \iint_{A_1 \cup A_2} f_{(X,Y)}(x,y) \, dx dy \\
 &= \iint_{A_1 \cup A_2} dx dy \\
 &= \text{area}(A_1) + \text{area}(A_2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, there is a 25% chance that the three pieces will form a triangle. \square

Example 6.3.3 (Buffon's Needle Experiment). An experiment consists of dropping a needle of length L onto a table that has a grid of parallel lines D units of length apart from one another (see Figure 6.3.4). Compute the probability that the needle will cross one of the lines.

Solution: Let X denote the distance from the mid-point of the needle to the closest line (see Figure 6.3.4). We assume that X is uniformly distributed on $(0, D/2)$; thus, the pdf of X is:

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{D}, & \text{if } 0 < x < D/2; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

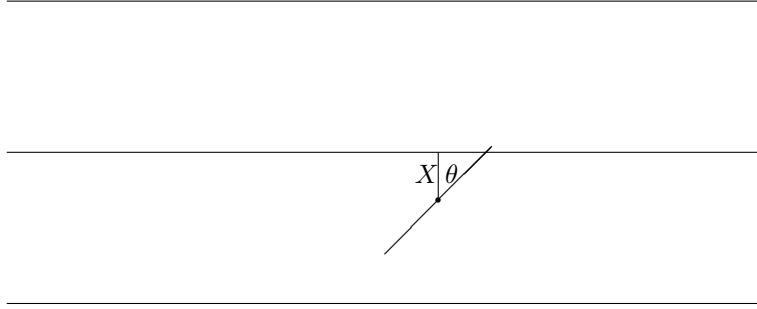


Figure 6.3.4: Buffon's Needle Experiment

Let Θ denote the acute angle that the needle makes with a line perpendicular to the parallel lines. We assume that Θ and X are independent and that Θ is uniformly distributed over $(0, \pi/2)$. Then, the pdf of Θ is given by

$$f_{\Theta}(\theta) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\pi}, & \text{if } 0 < \theta < \pi/2; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

and the joint pdf of X and Θ is

$$f_{(X, \Theta)}(x, \theta) = \begin{cases} \frac{4}{\pi D}, & \text{if } 0 < x < 1/2, 0 < \theta < \pi/2; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

When the needle meets a line, as shown in Figure 6.3.4, it forms a right triangle whose legs are the closest line to the middle of the needle and the line segment of length X connecting the middle to the closest line as shown in the Figure. Then, $\frac{X}{\cos \theta}$ is the length of the hypotenuse of that triangle. We therefore have that the event that the needle will meet a line is equivalent to the event

$$\frac{X}{\cos \Theta} < \frac{L}{2},$$

or

$$A = \left\{ (x, \theta) \in (0, 2) \times (0, \pi/2) \mid X < \frac{L}{2} \cos \theta \right\}.$$

We then have that the probability that the needle meets a line is

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pr(A) &= \iint_A f_{(X,\Theta)}(x,\theta) \, dx d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{L \cos(\theta)/2} \frac{4}{\pi D} \, dx d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2L}{\pi D} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos \theta \, d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2L}{\pi D} \sin \theta \Big|_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &= \frac{2L}{\pi D}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, in the case in which $D = L$, there is a $2/\pi$, or about 64%, chance that the needle will meet a line. \square

Example 6.3.4 (Infinite two-dimensional target). Place the center of a target for a darts game at the origin of the xy -plane. If a dart lands at a point with coordinates (X, Y) , then the random variables X and Y measure the horizontal and vertical miss distance, respectively. For instance, if $X < 0$ and $Y > 0$, then

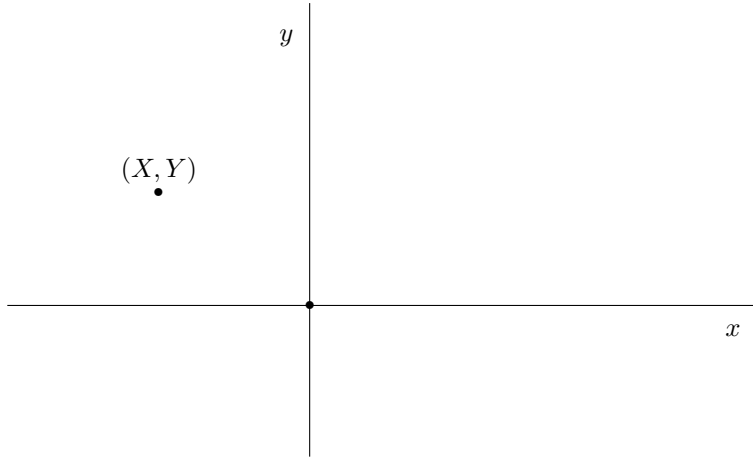


Figure 6.3.5: xy -target

the dart landed to the left of the center at a distance $|X|$ from a vertical line going through the origin, and at a distance Y above the horizontal line going through the origin (see Figure 6.3.5).

We assume that X and Y are independent, and we are interested in finding the marginal pdfs f_X and f_Y of X and Y , respectively.

Assume further that the joint pdf of X and Y is given by the function $f(x, y)$, and that it depends only on the distance from (X, Y) to the origin. More precisely, we suppose that

$$f(x, y) = g(x^2 + y^2) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2,$$

where g is a differentiable function of a single variable. This implies that

$$g(t) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0,$$

and

$$\int_0^\infty g(t) dt = \frac{1}{\pi}. \quad (6.4)$$

This follows from the fact that f is a pdf and therefore

$$\iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} f(x, y) dx dy = 1.$$

Thus, switching to polar coordinates,

$$1 = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\infty g(r^2) r dr d\theta.$$

Hence, after making the change of variables $t = r^2$, we get that

$$1 = 2\pi \int_0^\infty g(r^2) r dr = \pi \int_0^\infty g(t) dt,$$

from which (6.4) follows.

Now, since we are assuming that X and Y are independent, it follows that

$$f(x, y) = f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

Thus

$$f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) = g(x^2 + y^2).$$

Differentiating with respect to x , we get

$$f'_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) = g'(x^2 + y^2) \cdot 2x.$$

Dividing this equation by $x \cdot f_X(x) \cdot f_Y(y) = x \cdot g(x^2 + y^2)$, we get

$$\frac{1}{x} \cdot \frac{f'_X(x)}{f_X(x)} = \frac{2g'(x^2 + y^2)}{g(x^2 + y^2)} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$$

with $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$.

Observe that the left-hand side of the equation is a function of x , while the right hand side is a function of both x and y . It follows that the left-hand-side must be constant. The reason for this is that, by symmetry,

$$2 \frac{g'(x^2 + y^2)}{g(x^2 + y^2)} = \frac{1}{y} \frac{f'_Y(y)}{f_Y(y)}$$

So that,

$$\frac{1}{x} \frac{f'_X(x)}{f_X(x)} = \frac{1}{y} \frac{f'_Y(y)}{f_Y(y)}$$

for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$. Thus, in particular

$$\frac{1}{x} \frac{f'_X(x)}{f_X(x)} = \frac{f'_Y(1)}{f_Y(1)} = a, \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R},$$

and some constant a . It then follows that

$$\frac{f'_X(x)}{f_X(x)} = ax$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. We therefore get that

$$\frac{d}{dx} [\ln(f_X(x))] = ax.$$

Integrating with respect to x , we then have that

$$\ln(f_X(x)) = a \frac{x^2}{2} + c_1,$$

for some constant of integration c_1 . Thus, exponentiating on both sides of the equation we get that

$$f_X(x) = ce^{\frac{a}{2}x^2} \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus $f_X(x)$ must be a multiple of $e^{\frac{a}{2}x^2}$. Now, for this to be a *pdf*, we must have that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_X(x) dx = 1.$$

Then, necessarily, it must be the case that $a < 0$ (Why?). Say, $a = -\delta^2$, then

$$f_X(x) = ce^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2}x^2}$$

To determine what the constant c should be, we use the condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_X(x) dx = 1.$$

Let

$$I = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\delta^2 x^2/2} dx.$$

Observe that

$$I = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\delta^2 y^2/2} dy.$$

We then have that

$$\begin{aligned} I^2 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\delta^2 \frac{x^2}{2}} dx \cdot \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\delta^2 \frac{y^2}{2}} dy \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2}(x^2+y^2)} dx dy. \end{aligned}$$

Switching to polar coordinates we get

$$\begin{aligned} I^2 &= \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2}r^2} r dr d\theta \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\delta^2} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-u} du \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\delta^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where we have also made the change of variables $u = \frac{\delta^2}{2}r^2$. Thus, taking the square root,

$$I = \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\delta}.$$

Hence, the condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_X(x) dx = 1$$

implies that

$$c \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\delta} = 1$$

from which we get that

$$c = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$$

Thus, the pdf for X is

$$f_X(x) = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{\delta^2 x^2}{2}} \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Similarly, or by using symmetry, we obtain that the pdf for Y is

$$f_Y(y) = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{\delta^2 y^2}{2}} \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

That is, X and Y have the same distribution.

We next set out to compute the expected value and variance of X . In order to do this, we first compute the moment generating function, $\psi_x(t)$, of X :

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_x(t) &= E(e^{tX}) \\ &= \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{tx} e^{-\frac{\delta^2 x^2}{2}} dx \\ &= \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2 x^2}{2} + tx} dx \\ &= \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} \left(x^2 - \frac{2tx}{\delta^2}\right)} dx\end{aligned}$$

Complete the square on x to get

$$x^2 - \frac{2t}{\delta^2}x = x^2 - \frac{2t}{\delta^2}x + \frac{t^2}{\delta^4} - \frac{t^2}{\delta^4} = \left(x - \frac{t}{\delta^2}\right)^2 - \frac{t^2}{\delta^4};$$

then,

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_x(t) &= \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} \left(x - \frac{t}{\delta^2}\right)^2} e^{t^2/2\delta^2} dx \\ &= e^{t^2/2\delta^2} \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} \left(x - \frac{t}{\delta^2}\right)^2} dx.\end{aligned}$$

Make the change of variables

$$u = x - \frac{t}{\delta^2}$$

then $du = dx$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_x(t) &= e^{\frac{t^2}{2\delta^2}} \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} u^2} du \\ &= e^{\frac{t^2}{2\delta^2}},\end{aligned}$$

since, as we have previously seen in this example,

$$f(u) = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} u^2}, \quad \text{for } u \in \mathbb{R},$$

is a pdf and therefore

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{\delta^2}{2} u^2} du = 1.$$

Hence, the mgf of X is

$$\psi_x(t) = e^{\frac{t^2}{2\delta^2}}, \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Differentiating with respect to t we obtain

$$\psi'_x(t) = \frac{t}{\delta^2} e^{\frac{t^2}{2\delta^2}}$$

and

$$\psi''_x(t) = \frac{1}{\delta^2} \left(1 + \frac{t^2}{\delta^2} \right) e^{t^2/2\delta^2}$$

for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

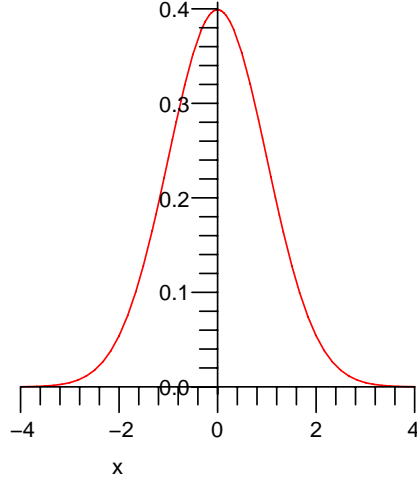


Figure 6.3.6: pdf for $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, 25/8\pi)$

Hence, the mean value of X is

$$E(X) = \psi'_x(0) = 0$$

and the second moment of X is

$$E(X^2) = \psi''_x(0) = \frac{1}{\delta^2}.$$

Thus, the variance of X is

$$\text{Var}(X) = \frac{1}{\delta^2}.$$

Next, set $\sigma^2 = \text{Var}(X)$. We then have that

$$\sigma = \frac{1}{\delta},$$

and we therefore can write the pdf of X as

$$f_x(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}} \quad -\infty < x < \infty.$$

A continuous random variable X having the pdf

$$f_X(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < x < \infty,$$

is said to have a **normal** distribution with mean 0 and variance σ^2 . We write $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, \sigma^2)$. Similarly, $Y \sim \text{Normal}(0, \sigma^2)$. A graph of the pdf for $X \sim \text{Normal}(0, \sigma^2)$, for $\sigma = 5/\sqrt{8\pi}$, is shown in Figure 6.3.6

Chapter 7

Some Special Distributions

In this notes and in the exercises we have encountered several special kinds of random variables and their respective distribution functions in the context of various examples and applications. For example, we have seen the uniform distribution over some interval (a, b) in the context of modeling the selection of a point in (a, b) at random, and the exponential distribution comes up when modeling the service time at a checkout counter. We have discussed Bernoulli trials and have seen that the sum of independent Bernoulli trials gives rise to the Binomial distribution. In the exercises we have seen the discrete uniform distribution, the geometric distribution and the hypergeometric distribution. More recently, in the last example of the previous section, we have seen that the miss horizontal distance from the y -axis of dart that lands in an infinite target follows a $\text{Normal}(0, \sigma^2)$ distribution (assuming that the miss horizontal and vertical distances are independent and that their joint pdf is radially symmetric). In the next section we discuss the normal distribution in more detail. In subsequent sections we discuss other distributions which come up frequently in application, such as the Poisson distribution.

7.1 The Normal Distribution

In Example 6.3.4 we saw that if X denotes the horizontal miss distance from the y -axis of a dart that lands on an infinite two-dimensional target, the X has a pdf given by

$$f_X(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < x < \infty,$$

for some constant $\sigma > 0$. In the derivation in Example 6.3.4 we assumed that the X is independent from the Y coordinate (or vertical miss distance) of the point where the dart lands, and that the joint distribution of X and Y depends only on the distance from that point to the origin. We say that X has a normal distribution with mean 0 and variance σ^2 . More generally, we have the following definition:

Definition 7.1.1 (Normal Distribution). A continuous random variable, X , with pdf

$$f_x(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < x < \infty,$$

and parameters μ and σ^2 , where $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\sigma > 0$, is said to have a **normal** distribution with parameters μ and σ^2 . We write $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$

The special random variable $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ has a distribution function known as the **standard normal distribution**:

$$f_z(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-z^2/2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < z < \infty. \quad (7.1)$$

From the calculations in Example 6.3.4 we get that the moment generating function for Z is

$$\psi_z(t) = e^{t^2/2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < t < \infty. \quad (7.2)$$

Example 7.1.2. Let $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\sigma > 0$ be given, and define

$$X = \sigma Z + \mu.$$

Show that $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ and compute the moment generating function of X , its expectation and its variance.

Solution: First we find the pdf of X and show that it is the same as that given in Definition 7.1.1. In order to do this, we first compute the cdf of X :

$$\begin{aligned} F_x(x) &= \Pr(X \leq x) \\ &= \Pr(\sigma Z + \mu \leq x) \\ &= \Pr[Z \leq (x - \mu)/\sigma] \\ &= F_z((x - \mu)/\sigma). \end{aligned}$$

Differentiating with respect to x , while remembering to use the Chain Rule, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} f_x(x) &= F'_z((x - \mu)/\sigma) \cdot (1/\sigma) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sigma} f_z\left(\frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, using (7.1), we get

$$\begin{aligned} f_x(x) &= \frac{1}{\sigma} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-[(x-\mu)/\sigma]^2/2} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}}, \end{aligned}$$

for $-\infty < x < \infty$, which is the pdf for a $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ random variable according to Definition 7.1.1.

Next, we compute the mgf of X :

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_X(t) &= E(e^{tX}) \\ &= E(e^{t(\sigma Z + \mu)}) \\ &= E(e^{t\sigma Z + t\mu}) \\ &= E(e^{\sigma t Z} e^{\mu t}) \\ &= e^{\mu t} E(e^{(\sigma t)Z}) \\ &= e^{\mu t} \psi_Z(\sigma t),\end{aligned}$$

for $-\infty < t < \infty$. It then follows from (7.2) that

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_X(t) &= e^{\mu t} e^{(\sigma t)^2/2} \\ &= e^{\mu t} e^{\sigma^2 t^2/2} \\ &= e^{\mu t + \sigma^2 t^2/2},\end{aligned}$$

for $-\infty < t < \infty$.

Differentiating with respect to t , we obtain

$$\psi'_X(t) = (\mu + \sigma^2 t) e^{\mu t + \sigma^2 t^2/2}$$

and

$$\psi''_X(t) = \sigma^2 e^{\mu t + \sigma^2 t^2/2} + (\mu + \sigma^2 t)^2 e^{\mu t + \sigma^2 t^2/2}$$

for $-\infty < t < \infty$.

Consequently, the expected value of X is

$$E(X) = \psi'_X(0) = \mu,$$

and the second moment of X is

$$E(X^2) = \psi''_X(0) = \sigma^2 + \mu^2.$$

Thus, the variance of X is

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2 = \sigma^2.$$

We have therefore shown that if $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$, then the parameter μ is the mean of X and σ^2 is the variance of X . \square

Example 7.1.3. Suppose that many observations from a $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ distribution are made. Estimate the proportion of observations that must lie within one standard deviation from the mean.

Solution: We are interested in estimating $\Pr(|X - \mu| < \sigma)$, where $X \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$.

Compute

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(|X - \mu| < \sigma) &= \Pr(-\sigma < X - \mu < \sigma) \\ &= \Pr\left(-1 < \frac{X - \mu}{\sigma} < 1\right),\end{aligned}$$

where, according to Problem (1) in Assignment #16,

$$\frac{X - \mu}{\sigma} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1);$$

that is, it has a standard normal distribution. Thus, setting

$$Z = \frac{X - \mu}{\sigma},$$

we get that

$$\Pr(|X - \mu| < \sigma) = \Pr(-1 < Z < 1),$$

where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(|X - \mu| < \sigma) &= \Pr(-1 < Z < 1) \\ &= \Pr(-1 < Z \leq 1) \\ &= F_z(1) - F_z(-1), \end{aligned}$$

where F_z is the cdf of Z . MS Excel has a built in function called `normdist` which returns the cumulative distribution function value at x , from a $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ random variable, X , given x , the mean μ , the standard deviation σ and a “TRUE” tag as follows:

$$F_z(z) = \text{normdist}(z, \mu, \sigma, \text{TRUE}) = \text{normdist}(z, 0, 1, \text{TRUE}).$$

We therefore obtain the approximation

$$\Pr(|X - \mu| < \sigma) \approx 0.8413 - 0.1587 = 0.6826, \quad \text{or about } 68\%.$$

Thus, around 68% of observations from a normal distribution should lie within one standard deviation from the mean. \square

Example 7.1.4 (The Chi-Square Distribution with one degree of freedom). Let $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ and define $Y = Z^2$. Give the pdf of Y .

Solution: The pdf of Z is given by

$$f_x(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-z^2/2}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < z < \infty.$$

We compute the pdf for Y by first determining its cdf:

$$\begin{aligned} P(Y \leq y) &= P(Z^2 \leq y) \quad \text{for } y \geq 0 \\ &= P(-\sqrt{y} \leq Z \leq \sqrt{y}) \\ &= P(-\sqrt{y} < Z \leq \sqrt{y}), \quad \text{since } Z \text{ is continuous.} \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} P(Y \leq y) &= P(Z \leq \sqrt{y}) - P(Z \leq -\sqrt{y}) \\ &= F_z(\sqrt{y}) - F_z(-\sqrt{y}) \quad \text{for } y > 0, \end{aligned}$$

since Y is continuous.

We then have that the cdf of Y is

$$F_Y(y) = F_Z(\sqrt{y}) - F_Z(-\sqrt{y}) \quad \text{for } y > 0,$$

from which we get, after differentiation with respect to y ,

$$\begin{aligned} f_Y(y) &= F'_Z(\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} + F'_Z(-\sqrt{y}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= f_Z(\sqrt{y}) \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} + f_Z(-\sqrt{y}) \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-y/2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-y/2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} e^{-y/2} \end{aligned}$$

for $y > 0$. □

Definition 7.1.5. A continuous random variable Y having the pdf

$$f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} e^{-y/2} & \text{if } y > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

is said to have a Chi-Square distribution with one degree of freedom. We write

$$Y \sim \chi_1^2.$$

Remark 7.1.6. Observe that if $Y \sim \chi_1^2$, then its expected value is

$$E(Y) = E(Z^2) = 1.$$

To compute the second moment of Y , $E(Y^2) = E(Z^4)$, we need to compute the fourth moment of Z . Recall that the mgf of Z is

$$\psi_Z(t) = e^{t^2/2} \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Its fourth derivative can be computed to be

$$\psi_Z^{(4)}(t) = (3 + 6t^2 + t^4) e^{t^2/2} \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus,

$$E(Z^4) = \psi_Z^{(4)}(0) = 3.$$

We then have that the variance of Y is

$$\text{Var}(Y) = E(Y^2) - 1 = E(Z^4) - 1 = 3 - 1 = 2.$$

7.2 The Poisson Distribution

Example 7.2.1 (Bacterial Mutations). Consider a colony of bacteria in a culture consisting of N bacteria. This number, N , is typically very large (in the order of 10^6 bacteria). We consider the question of how many of those bacteria will develop a specific mutation in their genetic material during one division cycle (e.g., a mutation that leads to resistance to certain antibiotic or virus). We assume that each bacterium has a very small, but positive, probability, a , of developing that mutation when it divides. This probability is usually referred to as the **mutation rate** for the particular mutation and organism. If we let X_N denote the number of bacteria, out of the N in the colony, that develop the mutation in a division cycle, we can model X_N by a binomial random variable with parameters a and N ; that is,

$$X_N \sim \text{Binomial}(N, a).$$

This assertion is justified by assuming that the event that a given bacterium develops a mutation is independent of any other bacterium in the colony developing a mutation. We then have that

$$\Pr(X_N = k) = \binom{N}{k} a^k (1-a)^{N-k}, \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (7.3)$$

Also,

$$E(X_N) = aN.$$

Thus, the average number of mutations in a division cycle is aN . We will denote this number by λ and will assume that it remains constant; that is,

$$aN = \lambda \text{ (a constant.)}$$

Since N is very large, it is reasonable to make the approximation

$$\Pr(X_N = k) \approx \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \binom{N}{k} a^k (1-a)^{N-k}, \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

provided that the limit on the right side of the expression exists. In this example we show that the limit in the expression above exists if $aN = \lambda$ is kept constant as N tends to infinity. To see why this is the case, we first substitute λ/N for a in the expression for $\Pr(X_N = k)$ in equation (7.3). We then get that

$$\Pr(X_N = k) = \binom{N}{k} \left(\frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^k \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^{N-k},$$

which can be re-written as

$$\Pr(X_N = k) = \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} \cdot \frac{N!}{(N-k)!} \cdot \frac{1}{N^k} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^N \cdot \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^{-k}. \quad (7.4)$$

Observe that

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^N = e^{-\lambda}, \quad (7.5)$$

since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n = e^x$ for all real numbers x . Also note that, since k is fixed,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{N}\right)^{-k} = 1. \quad (7.6)$$

It remains to see then what happens to the term $\frac{N!}{(N-k)!} \cdot \frac{1}{N^k}$, in equation (7.4), as $N \rightarrow \infty$. To answer this question, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{N!}{(N-k)!} \cdot \frac{1}{N^k} &= \frac{N(N-1)(N-2) \cdots (N-(k-1))}{N^k} \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{1}{N}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{N}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{k-1}{N}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, since

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{j}{N}\right) = 1 \quad \text{for all } j = 1, 2, 3, \dots, k-1,$$

it follows that

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{N!}{(N-k)!} \cdot \frac{1}{N^k} = 1. \quad (7.7)$$

Hence, in view of equations (7.5), (7.6) and (7.7), we see from equation (7.4) that

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_N = k) = \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} e^{-\lambda} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (7.8)$$

The limiting distribution obtained in equation (7.8) is known as the **Poisson distribution** with parameter λ . We have therefore shown that the number of mutations occurring in a bacterial colony of size N , per division cycle, can be approximated by a Poisson random variable with parameter $\lambda = aN$, where a is the mutation rate.

Definition 7.2.2 (Poisson distribution). A discrete random variable, X , with pmf

$$p_X(k) = \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} e^{-\lambda} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots; \text{ zero elsewhere,}$$

where $\lambda > 0$, is said to have a **Poisson** distribution with parameter λ . We write $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$.

To see that the expression for $p_X(k)$ in Definition 7.2.2 indeed defines a pmf, observe that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} = e^{\lambda},$$

from which we get that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_X(k) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda^k}{k!} e^{-\lambda} = e^{\lambda} \cdot e^{-\lambda} = 1.$$

In a similar way we can compute the mgf of $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ to obtain (see Problem 1 in Assignment #13):

$$\psi_X(t) = e^{\lambda(e^t-1)} \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Using this mgf we can derive that the expected value of $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ is

$$E(X) = \lambda,$$

and its variance is

$$\text{Var}(X) = \lambda$$

as well.

Example 7.2.3 (Sum of Independent Poisson Random Variables). Suppose that $X \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda_1)$ and $Y \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda_2)$ are independent random variables, where λ_1 and λ_2 are positive. Define $Z = X + Y$. Give the distribution of Z .

Solution: Use the independence of X and Y to compute the mgf of Z :

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_Z(t) &= \psi_{X+Y}(t) \\ &= \psi_X(t) \cdot \psi_Y(t) \\ &= e^{\lambda_1(e^t-1)} \cdot e^{\lambda_2(e^t-1)} \\ &= e^{(\lambda_1+\lambda_2)(e^t-1)}, \end{aligned}$$

which is the mgf of a $\text{Poisson}(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)$ distribution. It then follows that

$$Z \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)$$

and therefore

$$p_Z(k) = \frac{(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)^k}{k!} e^{-\lambda_1 - \lambda_2} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots; \text{ zero elsewhere.}$$

□

Example 7.2.4 (Estimating Mutation Rates in Bacterial Populations). Luria and Delbrück¹ devised the following procedure (known as the *fluctuation test*) to estimate the *mutation rate*, a , for certain bacteria:

Imagine that you start with a single normal bacterium (with no mutations) and allow it to grow to produce several bacteria. Place each of these bacteria in test-tubes each with media conducive to growth. Suppose the bacteria in the test-tubes are allowed to reproduce for n division cycles. After the n^{th} division

¹(1943) *Mutations of bacteria from virus sensitivity to virus resistance*. *Genetics*, **28**, 491–511

cycle, the content of each test-tube is placed onto a agar plate containing a virus population which is lethal to the bacteria which have not developed resistance. Those bacteria which have mutated into resistant strains will continue to replicate, while those that are sensitive to the virus will die. After certain time, the resistant bacteria will develop visible colonies on the plates. The number of these colonies will then correspond to the number of resistant cells in each test tube at the time they were exposed to the virus. This number corresponds to the number of bacteria in the colony that developed a mutation which led to resistance. We denote this number by X_N , as we did in Example 7.2.1, where N is the size of the colony after the n^{th} division cycle. Assuming that the bacteria may develop mutation to resistance after exposure to the virus, the argument in Example 7.2.1 shows that, if N is very large, the distribution of X_N can be approximated by a Poisson distribution with parameter $\lambda = aN$, where a is the mutation rate and N is the size of the colony. It then follows that the probability of no mutations occurring in one division cycle is

$$\Pr(X_N = 0) \approx e^{-\lambda}. \quad (7.9)$$

This probability can also be estimated experimentally as Luria and Delbrück showed in their 1943 paper. In one of the experiments described in that paper, out of 87 cultures of 2.4×10^8 bacteria, 29 showed not resistant bacteria (i.e., none of the bacteria in the culture mutated to resistance and therefore all perished after exposure to the virus). We therefore have that

$$\Pr(X_N = 0) \approx \frac{29}{87}.$$

Comparing this to the expression in Equation (7.9), we obtain that

$$e^{-\lambda} \approx \frac{29}{87},$$

which can be solved for λ to obtain

$$\lambda \approx -\ln\left(\frac{29}{87}\right)$$

or

$$\lambda \approx 1.12.$$

The mutation rate, a , can then be estimated from $\lambda = aN$:

$$a = \frac{\lambda}{N} \approx \frac{1.12}{2.4 \times 10^8} \approx 4.7 \times 10^{-9}.$$

Chapter 8

Convergence in Distribution

We have seen in Example 7.2.1 that if $X_n \sim \text{Binomial}(\lambda/n, n)$, for some constant $\lambda > 0$ and $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and if $Y \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$, then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_n = k) = \Pr(Y = k) \quad \text{for all } k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

We then say that the sequence of Binomial random variables (X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots) **converges in distribution** to the Poisson random variable Y with parameter λ . This concept will be made more general and precise in the following section.

8.1 Definition of Convergence in Distribution

Definition 8.1.1 (Convergence in Distribution). Let (X_n) be a sequence of random variables with cumulative distribution functions F_{X_n} , for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and Y be a random variable with cdf F_Y . We say that the sequence (X_n) converges to Y in distribution, if

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_{X_n}(x) = F_Y(x)$$

for all x where F_Y is continuous.

We write

$$X_n \xrightarrow{D} Y \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Thus, if (X_n) converges to Y in distribution then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_n \leq x) = \Pr(Y \leq x) \quad \text{for } x \text{ at which } F_Y \text{ is continuous.}$$

If Y is discrete, for instance taking on nonzero values at $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$ (as is the case with the Poisson distribution), then F_Y is continuous in between consecutive integers k and $k+1$. We therefore get that for any ε with $0 < \varepsilon < 1$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_n \leq k + \varepsilon) = \Pr(Y \leq k + \varepsilon)$$

for all $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$. Similarly,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_n \leq k - \varepsilon) = \Pr(Y \leq k - \varepsilon)$$

for all $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$. We therefore get that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(k - \varepsilon < X_n \leq k + \varepsilon) = \Pr(k - \varepsilon < Y \leq k + \varepsilon)$$

for all $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$. From this we get that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(X_n = k) = \Pr(Y = k)$$

for all $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, in the discrete case.

If (X_n) converges to Y in distribution and the moment generating functions $\psi_{X_n}(t)$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and $\psi_Y(t)$ all exist on some common interval of values of t , then it might be the case, under certain technical conditions which may be found in a paper by Kozakiewicz,¹ that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{X_n}(t) = \psi_Y(t)$$

for all t in the common interval of existence.

Example 8.1.2. Let $X_n \sim \text{Binomial}(\lambda/n, n)$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

$$\psi_{X_n}(t) = \left(\frac{\lambda e^t}{n} + 1 - \frac{\lambda}{n} \right)^n \quad \text{for all } n \text{ and all } t.$$

Then,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{X_n}(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{\lambda(e^t - 1)}{n} \right)^n = e^{\lambda(e^t - 1)},$$

which is the moment generating function of a $\text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ distribution. This is not surprising since we already know that X_n converges to $Y \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$ in distribution. What is surprising is the theorem discussed in the next section known as the **mgf Convergence Theorem**.

8.2 mgf Convergence Theorem

Theorem 8.2.1 (mgf Convergence Theorem, Theorem 5.7.4 on page 289 in the text). *Let (X_n) be a sequence of random variables with moment generating functions $\psi_{X_n}(t)$ for $|t| < h$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and some positive number h . Suppose Y has mgf $\psi_Y(t)$ which exists for $|t| < h$. Then, if*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{X_n}(t) = \psi_Y(t), \quad \text{for } |t| < h,$$

it follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_{X_n}(x) = F_Y(x)$$

for all x where F_Y is continuous.

¹(1947) *On the Convergence of Sequences of Moment Generating Functions*. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, Volume 28, Number 1, pp. 61–69

Notation. If (X_n) converges to Y in distribution as n tends to infinity, we write

$$X_n \xrightarrow{D} Y \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

The mgf Convergence Theorem then says that if the moment generating functions of a sequence of random variables, (X_n) , converges to the mgf of a random variable Y on some interval around 0, the X_n converges to Y in distribution as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

The mgf Theorem is usually ascribed to Lévy and Cramér (c.f. the paper by Curtiss²)

Example 8.2.2. Let X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots denote independent, Poisson(λ) random variables. For each $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, define the random variable

$$\bar{X}_n = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n}{n}.$$

\bar{X}_n is called the **sample mean** of the **random sample of size n** , $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n\}$.

The expected value of the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , is obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} E(\bar{X}_n) &= E\left(\frac{1}{n}(X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n)\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n E(X_k) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n \lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{n}(n\lambda) \\ &= \lambda. \end{aligned}$$

²(1942) *A note on the Theory of Moment Generating Functions*. Annals of Mathematical Statistics, Volume 13, Number 4, pp. 430–433

Since the X_i 's are independent, the variance of \bar{X}_n can be computed as follows

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Var}(\bar{X}_n) &= \text{Var}\left(\frac{1}{n}(X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n)\right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n^2} \sum_{k=1}^n \text{Var}(X_k) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n^2} \sum_{k=1}^n \lambda \\
 &= \frac{1}{n^2}(n\lambda) \\
 &= \frac{\lambda}{n}.
 \end{aligned}$$

We can also compute the mgf of \bar{X}_n as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) &= E(e^{t\bar{X}_n}) \\
 &= \psi_{X_1+X_2+\cdots+X_n}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \\
 &= \psi_{X_1}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \psi_{X_2}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \cdots \psi_{X_n}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right),
 \end{aligned}$$

since the X_i 's are linearly independent. Thus, given the X_i 's are identically distributed Poisson(λ),

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) &= \left[\psi_{X_1}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \right]^n \\
 &= \left[e^{\lambda(e^{t/n}-1)} \right]^n \\
 &= e^{\lambda n(e^{t/n}-1)},
 \end{aligned}$$

for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

Next we define the random variables

$$Z_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - E(\bar{X}_n)}{\sqrt{\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n)}} = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \lambda}{\sqrt{\lambda/n}}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

We would like to see if the sequence of random variables (Z_n) converges in distribution to a limiting random variable. To answer this question, we apply

the mgf Convergence Theorem (Theorem 8.2.1). Thus, we compute the mgf of Z_n for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{z_n}(t) &= E(e^{tZ_n}) \\ &= E\left(e^{\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\bar{X}_n - t\sqrt{\lambda n}}\right) \\ &= e^{-t\sqrt{\lambda n}} E\left(e^{\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\bar{X}_n}\right) \\ &= e^{-t\sqrt{\lambda n}} \psi_{\bar{X}_n}\left(\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{\lambda}}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Next, use the fact that

$$\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) = e^{\lambda n(e^{t/n} - 1)},$$

for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$, to get that

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{z_n}(t) &= e^{-t\sqrt{\lambda n}} e^{\lambda n(e^{(t\sqrt{n}/\sqrt{\lambda})/n} - 1)} \\ &= e^{-t\sqrt{\lambda n}} e^{\lambda n(e^{t/\sqrt{\lambda n}} - 1)}.\end{aligned}$$

Now, using the fact that

$$e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \dots,$$

we obtain that

$$e^{t/\sqrt{n\lambda}} = 1 + \frac{t}{\sqrt{n\lambda}} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{t^2}{n\lambda} + \frac{1}{3!} \frac{t^3}{n\lambda\sqrt{n\lambda}} + \frac{1}{4!} \frac{t^4}{(n\lambda)^2} + \dots$$

so that

$$e^{t/\sqrt{n\lambda}} - 1 = \frac{t}{\sqrt{n\lambda}} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{t^2}{n\lambda} + \frac{1}{3!} \frac{t^3}{n\lambda\sqrt{n\lambda}} + \frac{1}{4!} \frac{t^4}{(n\lambda)^2} + \dots$$

and

$$\lambda n(e^{t/\sqrt{n\lambda}} - 1) = \sqrt{n\lambda}t + \frac{1}{2}t^2 + \frac{1}{3!} \frac{t^3}{n\lambda} + \frac{1}{4!} \frac{t^4}{n\lambda} + \dots$$

Consequently,

$$e^{\lambda n(e^{t/\sqrt{n\lambda}} - 1)} = e^{\sqrt{n\lambda}t} \cdot e^{t^2/2} \cdot e^{\frac{1}{3!} \frac{t^3}{n\lambda} + \frac{1}{4!} \frac{t^4}{n\lambda} + \dots}$$

and

$$e^{-\sqrt{n\lambda}t} e^{\lambda n(e^{t/\sqrt{n\lambda}} - 1)} = e^{t^2/2} \cdot e^{\frac{1}{3!} \frac{t^3}{n\lambda} + \frac{1}{4!} \frac{t^4}{n\lambda} + \dots}.$$

Observe that the exponent in the last exponential tends to 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$. We therefore get that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[e^{-\sqrt{n}\lambda t} e^{\lambda n(e^{t/\sqrt{n}\lambda} - 1)} \right] = e^{t^2/2} \cdot e^0 = e^{t^2/2}.$$

We have thus shown that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{Z_n}(t) = e^{t^2/2}, \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R},$$

where the right-hand side is the mgf of $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. Hence, by the mgf Convergence Theorem, Z_n converges in distribution to a $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ random variable.

Example 8.2.3 (Estimating Proportions). Suppose we sample from a given voting population by surveying a random group of n people from that population and asking them whether or not they support certain candidate. In the population (which could consists of hundreds of thousands of voters) there is a proportion, p , of people who support the candidate, and which is not known with certainty. If we denote the responses of the surveyed n people by X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n , then we can model these responses as independent Bernoulli(p) random variables: a responses of “yes” corresponds to $X_i = 1$, while $X_i = 0$ is a “no.” The sample mean,

$$\bar{X}_n = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n}{n},$$

give the proportion of individuals from the sample who support the candidate. Since $E(X_i) = p$ for each i , the expected value of the sample mean is

$$E(\bar{X}_n) = p.$$

Thus, \bar{X}_n can be used as an estimate for the true proportion, p , of people who support the candidate. How good can this estimate be? In this example we try to answer this question.

By independence of the X_i 's, we get that

$$\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n) = \frac{1}{n} \text{Var}(X_1) = \frac{p(1-p)}{n}.$$

Also, the mgf of \bar{X}_n is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) &= E(e^{t\bar{X}_n}) \\
 &= \psi_{X_1+X_2+\dots+X_n}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \\
 &= \psi_{X_1}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right)\psi_{X_2}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right)\cdots\psi_{X_n}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right) \\
 &= \left[\psi_{X_1}\left(\frac{t}{n}\right)\right]^n \\
 &= \left(p e^{t/n} + 1 - p\right)^n.
 \end{aligned}$$

As in the previous example, we define the random variables

$$Z_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - E(\bar{X}_n)}{\sqrt{\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n)}} = \frac{\bar{X}_n - p}{\sqrt{p(1-p)/n}}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

or

$$Z_n = \frac{\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}}\bar{X}_n - \sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Thus, the mgf of Z_n is

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_{Z_n}(t) &= E(e^{tZ_n}) \\
 &= E\left(e^{\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}}\bar{X}_n - t\sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}}\right) \\
 &= e^{-t\sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}} E\left(e^{\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}}\bar{X}_n}\right) \\
 &= e^{-t\sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}} \psi_{\bar{X}_n}\left(\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}}\right) \\
 &= e^{-t\sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}} \left(p e^{(t\sqrt{n}/\sqrt{p(1-p)})/n} + 1 - p\right)^n \\
 &= e^{-t\sqrt{\frac{np}{1-p}}} \left(p e^{(t/\sqrt{np(1-p)})} + 1 - p\right)^n \\
 &= \left[e^{-tp\sqrt{\frac{1}{np(1-p)}}} \left(p e^{(t/\sqrt{np(1-p)})} + 1 - p\right)\right]^n \\
 &= \left(p e^{t(1-p)/\sqrt{np(1-p)}} + (1-p)e^{tp/\sqrt{np(1-p)}}\right)^n.
 \end{aligned}$$

To compute the limit of $\psi_{z_n}(t)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we first compute the limit of $\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t))$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, where

$$\begin{aligned}\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) &= n \ln\left(p e^{t(1-p)/\sqrt{np(1-p)}} + (1-p)e^{-tp/\sqrt{np(1-p)}}\right) \\ &= n \ln\left(p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}\right),\end{aligned}$$

where we have set

$$a = \frac{(1-p)t}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}} \quad \text{and} \quad b = \frac{pt}{\sqrt{p(1-p)}}.$$

Observe that

$$pa - (1-p)b = 0, \tag{8.1}$$

and

$$p a^2 + (1-p)b^2 = (1-p)t^2 + p t^2 = t^2. \tag{8.2}$$

Writing

$$\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) = \frac{\ln\left(p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}\right)}{\frac{1}{n}},$$

we see that L'Hospital's Rule can be applied to compute the limit of $\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t))$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. We therefore get that

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{-\frac{a}{2} \frac{1}{n\sqrt{n}} p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + \frac{b}{2} \frac{1}{n\sqrt{n}} (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}}{p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}} \\ &\quad \frac{1}{-\frac{1}{n^2}} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\frac{a}{2} \sqrt{n} p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - \frac{b}{2} \sqrt{n} (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}}{p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sqrt{n} \left(ap e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - b(1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}} \right)}{p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}}.\end{aligned}$$

Observe that the denominator in the last expression tends to 1 as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Thus, if we can prove that the limit of the numerator exists, then the limit of $\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t))$ will be 1/2 of that limit:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) = \frac{1}{2} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[\sqrt{n} \left(ap e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - b(1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}} \right) \right]. \tag{8.3}$$

The limit of the right-hand side of Equation (8.3) can be computed by L'Hospital's rule by writing

$$\sqrt{n} \left(ap e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - b(1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}} \right) = \frac{ap e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - b(1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}},$$

and observing that the numerator goes to 0 as n tends to infinity by virtue of Equation (8.1). Thus, we may apply L'Hospital's Rule to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{n} \left(ap e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - b(1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}} \right) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{-\frac{a^2}{2n\sqrt{n}} p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} - \frac{b^2}{2n\sqrt{n}} (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}}}{-\frac{1}{2n\sqrt{n}}} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(a^2 p e^{a/\sqrt{n}} + b^2 (1-p) e^{-b/\sqrt{n}} \right) \\ &= a^2 p + b^2 (1-p) \\ &= t^2, \end{aligned}$$

by Equation (8.2). It then follows from Equation (8.3) that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln(\psi_{Z_n}(t)) = \frac{t^2}{2}.$$

Consequently, by continuity of the exponential function,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{Z_n}(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} e^{\ln(\psi_{Z_n}(t))} = e^{t^2/2},$$

which is the mgf of a Normal(0, 1) random variable. Thus, by the mgf Convergence Theorem, it follows that Z_n converges in distribution to a standard normal random variable. Hence, for any $z \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr \left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - p}{\sqrt{p(1-p)/n}} \leq z \right) = \Pr(Z \leq z),$$

where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. Similarly, with $-z$ instead of z ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr \left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - p}{\sqrt{p(1-p)/n}} \leq -z \right) = \Pr(Z \leq -z).$$

It then follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr \left(-z < \frac{\bar{X}_n - p}{\sqrt{p(1-p)/n}} \leq z \right) = \Pr(-z < Z \leq z).$$

In a later example, we shall see how this information can be used provide a good interval estimate for the true proportion p .

The last two examples show that if X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots are independent random variables which are distributed either Poisson(λ) or Bernoulli(p), then the random variables

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - E(\bar{X}_n)}{\sqrt{\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n)}},$$

where \bar{X}_n denotes the sample mean of the random sample $\{X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n\}$, for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, converge in distribution to a $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ random variable; that is,

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - E(\bar{X}_n)}{\sqrt{\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n)}} \xrightarrow{D} Z \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty,$$

where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. It is not a coincidence that in both cases we obtain a standard normal random variable as the limiting distribution. The examples in this section are instances of general result known as the **Central Limit Theorem** to be discussed in the next section.

8.3 Central Limit Theorem

Theorem 8.3.1 (Central Limit Theorem). *Suppose $X_1, X_2, X_3 \dots$ are independent, identically distributed random variables with $E(X_i) = \mu$ and finite variance $\text{Var}(X_i) = \sigma^2$, for all i . Then*

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{D} Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

Thus, for large values of n , the distribution function for $\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}$ can be approximated by the standard normal distribution.

Proof. We shall prove the theorem for the special case in which the mgf of X_1 exists is some interval around 0. This will allow us to use the mgf Convergence Theorem (Theorem 8.2.1).

We shall first prove the theorem for the case $\mu = 0$. We then have that

$$\psi'_{X_1}(0) = 0$$

and

$$\psi''_{X_1}(0) = \sigma^2.$$

Let

$$Z_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} = \frac{\sqrt{n}}{\sigma} \bar{X}_n \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

since $\mu = 0$. Then, the mgf of Z_n is

$$\psi_{Z_n}(t) = \psi_{\bar{X}_n} \left(\frac{t\sqrt{n}}{\sigma} \right),$$

where the mgf of \bar{X}_n is

$$\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) = \left[\psi_{X_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \right]^n,$$

for all $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. Consequently,

$$\psi_{z_n}(t) = \left[\psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{\sigma\sqrt{n}} \right) \right]^n, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

To determine if the limit of $\psi_{z_n}(t)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ exists, we first consider $\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t))$:

$$\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) = n \ln \psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{\sigma\sqrt{n}} \right).$$

Set $a = t/\sigma$ and introduce the new variable $u = 1/\sqrt{n}$. We then have that

$$\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) = \frac{1}{u^2} \ln \psi_{x_1}(au).$$

Thus, since $u \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we have that, if $\lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{u^2} \ln \psi_{x_1}(au)$ exists, it will be the limit of $\ln(\psi_{z_n}(t))$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Since $\psi_{x_1}(0) = 1$, we can apply L'Hospital's Rule to get

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln(\psi_{x_1}(au))}{u^2} &= \lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{a \frac{\psi'_{x_1}(au)}{\psi_{x_1}(au)}}{2u} \\ &= \frac{a}{2} \lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{1}{\psi_{x_1}(au)} \cdot \frac{\psi'_{x_1}(au)}{u} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (8.4)$$

Now, since $\psi'_{x_1}(0) = 0$, we can apply L'Hospital's Rule to compute the limit

$$\lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{\psi'_{x_1}(au)}{u} = \lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{a\psi''_{x_1}(au)}{1} = a\psi''_{x_1}(0) = a\sigma^2.$$

It then follows from Equation 8.4 that

$$\lim_{u \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln(\psi_{x_1}(au))}{u^2} = \frac{a}{2} \cdot a\sigma^2 = \frac{t^2}{2},$$

since $a = t/\sigma$. Consequently,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln(\psi_{z_n}(t)) = \frac{t^2}{2},$$

which implies that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{z_n}(t) = e^{t^2/2},$$

the mgf of a Normal(0,1) random variable. It then follows from the mgf Convergence Theorem that

$$Z_n \xrightarrow{D} Z \sim \text{Normal}(0,1) \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Next, suppose that $\mu \neq 0$ and define $Y_k = X_k - \mu$ for each $k = 1, 2, 3 \dots$. Then $E(Y_k) = 0$ for all k and $\text{Var}(Y_k) = E((X_k - \mu)^2) = \sigma^2$. Thus, by the preceding,

$$\frac{\sum_{k=1}^n Y_k/n}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{D} Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1),$$

or

$$\frac{\sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \mu)/n}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{D} Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1),$$

or

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{D} Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1),$$

which we wanted to prove. \square

Example 8.3.2 (Trick coin example, revisited). Recall the first example we did in this course. The one about determining whether we had a trick coin or not. Suppose we toss a coin 500 times and we get 225 heads. Is that enough evidence to conclude that the coin is not fair?

Suppose the coin was fair. What is the likelihood that we will see 225 heads or fewer in 500 tosses? Let Y denote the number of heads in 500 tosses. Then, if the coin is fair,

$$Y \sim \text{Binomial}\left(\frac{1}{2}, 500\right)$$

Thus,

$$P(X \leq 225) = \sum_{k=0}^{225} \binom{500}{k} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{500}.$$

We can do this calculation or approximate it as follows:

By the Central Limit Theorem, we know that

$$\frac{Y_n - np}{\sqrt{np(1-p)}} \approx Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$$

if $Y_n \sim \text{Binomial}(n, p)$ and n is large. In this case $n = 500$, $p = 1/2$. Thus, $np = 250$ and $\sqrt{np(1-p)} = \sqrt{250(\frac{1}{2})} \doteq 11.2$. We then have that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(X \leq 225) &\doteq \Pr\left(\frac{X - 250}{11.2} \leq -2.23\right) \\ &\doteq \Pr(Z \leq -2.23) \\ &\doteq \int_{-\infty}^{-2.23} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-t^2/2} dz. \end{aligned}$$

The value of $\Pr(Z \leq -2.23)$ can be obtained in at least two ways:

1. Using the `normdist` function in MS Excel:

$$\Pr(Z \leq -2.23) = \text{normdist}(-2.23, 0, 1, \text{true}) \approx 0.013.$$

2. Using the table of the standard normal distribution function on page 861 in the text. This table lists values of the cdf, $F_Z(z)$, of $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ with an accuracy of four decimal places, for positive values of z , where z is listed with up to two decimal places.

Values of $F_Z(z)$ are not given for negative values of z in the table on page 778. However, these can be computed using the formula

$$F_Z(-z) = 1 - F_Z(z)$$

for $z \geq 0$, where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$.

We then get

$$F_Z(-2.23) = 1 - F_Z(2.23) \approx 1 - 0.9871 = 0.0129$$

We then get that $\Pr(X \leq 225) \approx 0.013$, or about 1.3%. This is a very small probability. So, it is very likely that the coin we have is the trick coin.

Chapter 9

Introduction to Estimation

In this chapter we see how the ideas introduced in the previous chapter can be used to estimate the proportion of voters in a population that support a candidate based on the sample mean of a random sample.

9.1 Point Estimation

We have seen that if X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is a random sample from a distribution of mean μ , then the expected value of the sample mean \bar{X}_n is

$$E(\bar{X}_n) = \mu.$$

We say that \bar{X}_n is an **unbiased** estimator for the mean μ .

Example 9.1.1 (Unbiased Estimation of the Variance). Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be a random sample from a distribution of mean μ and variance σ^2 . Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \mu)^2 &= \sum_{k=1}^n [X_k^2 - 2\mu X_k + \mu^2] \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n X_k^2 - 2\mu \sum_{k=1}^n X_k + n\mu^2 \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n X_k^2 - 2\mu n\bar{X}_n + n\mu^2. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2 &= \sum_{k=1}^n [X_k^2 - 2\bar{X}_n X_k + \bar{X}_n^2] \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n X_k^2 - 2\bar{X}_n \sum_{k=1}^n X_k + n\bar{X}_n^2 \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n X_k^2 - 2n\bar{X}_n\bar{X}_n + n\bar{X}_n^2 \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n X_k^2 - n\bar{X}_n^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Consequently,

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \mu)^2 - \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2 = n\bar{X}_n^2 - 2\mu n\bar{X}_n + n\mu^2 = n(\bar{X}_n - \mu)^2.$$

It then follows that

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2 = \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \mu)^2 - n(\bar{X}_n - \mu)^2.$$

Taking expectations on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 E\left(\sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2\right) &= \sum_{k=1}^n E[(X_k - \mu)^2] - nE[(\bar{X}_n - \mu)^2] \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n \sigma^2 - n\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n) \\
 &= n\sigma^2 - n\frac{\sigma^2}{n} \\
 &= (n-1)\sigma^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, dividing by $n-1$,

$$E\left(\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2\right) = \sigma^2.$$

Hence, the random variable

$$S_n^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2,$$

called the **sample variance**, is an unbiased estimator of the variance.

Note that the estimator

$$\hat{\sigma}_n^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2$$

is not an unbiased estimator for σ^2 . Indeed, it can be shown that

$$E(\hat{\sigma}_n^2) = \sigma^2 - \frac{\sigma^2}{n}.$$

The random variable $\hat{\sigma}_n^2$ is called the **maximum likelihood estimator** for the variance, σ^2 .

9.2 Estimating the Mean

Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n denote a random sample from a distribution of mean μ and variance σ^2 . In real-world applications of sampling, the common distribution of the random variables, X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n , as well as the parameters μ and σ are unknown. In the previous section, we saw that the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , can be used to estimate the mean, μ , of the unknown distribution. Thus, we can write

$$\mu \approx \bar{X}_n. \quad (9.1)$$

In this section we develop concepts and techniques that allow us to measure how good the approximation in (9.1) is.

Now, the sample mean \bar{X}_n is a random variable. The distribution of \bar{X}_n , called the sampling distribution of the statistic \bar{X}_n , is usually unknown. If n is very large, though, the central limit theorem implies that the distribution of the sample mean \bar{X}_n can be approximated by the distribution of a normal($\mu, \sigma^2/n$) random variable. Thus, for samples of large size, the central limit theorem allows us to obtain an approximate picture of the sampling distribution of \bar{X}_n (see Figure 9.2.1). The values of \bar{X}_n may fall anywhere in the x -axis in Figure 9.2.1. On average, the values of \bar{X}_n should lie close to μ in the picture in Figure 9.2.1. This is a consequence of the fact that \bar{X}_n is an unbiased estimator for μ ; that is,

$$E(\bar{X}_n) = \mu.$$

We would like to obtain a measure of the likelihood that the values of \bar{X}_n will lie within a certain distance $\varepsilon > 0$ of the mean μ ; that is, we would like to estimate the probability

$$\Pr(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| \leq \varepsilon)$$

when n is very large.

While the central limit theorem tells us what the limiting distribution of the random variables

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}},$$

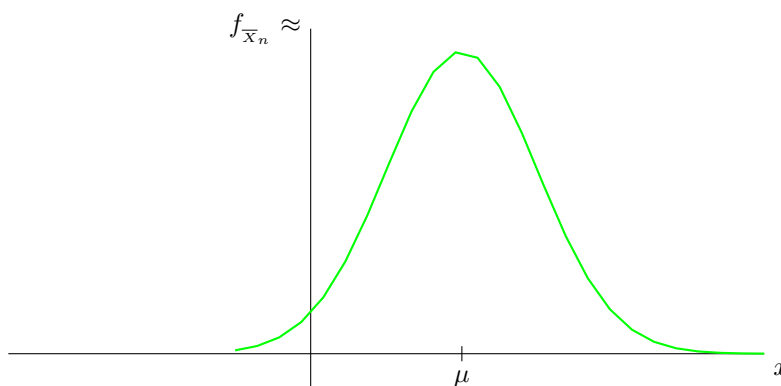


Figure 9.2.1: Approximate sampling distribution of \bar{X}_n for large values of n

as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we have not yet talked about the limit distribution of \bar{X}_n as $n \rightarrow \infty$. In the next example, we explore that question for the special case in which the random variables

$$X_1, X_2, X_3 \dots$$

are independent, identically distributed random variables for which the moment generating functions exist in some interval $|t| < \delta$, for $\delta > 0$.

Example 9.2.1 (Limiting distribution of the sample mean). Let X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots be iid random variables with moment generating functions $\psi_{X_k}(t)$, for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ defined for $|t| < \delta$, for some $\delta > 0$.

We use the mgf convergence theorem to determine the limiting distribution of \bar{X}_n as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

The mgf of the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , is given by

$$\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) = \left[\psi_{X_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \right]^n, \quad \text{for } |t| < \delta, \quad \text{and for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (9.2)$$

Here we have used the assumption that the random variables, X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots , are independent, identically distributed, and that they have moment generating functions defined for $|t| < \delta$.

We set

$$\psi'_{X_1}(0) = \mu, \quad (9.3)$$

and recall that

$$\psi_{X_1}(0) = 1. \quad (9.4)$$

To find the limit of $\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t)$ in (9.2) as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we first compute

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln \left(\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) \right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n \ln \left[\psi_{X_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \right]. \quad (9.5)$$

It follows from the fact in (9.3) that the limit on the right-hand side of (5.17) can be computed by means of L'Hospital's Rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n \ln \left[\psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \right] &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ln \left[\psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \right]}{\frac{1}{n}} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\frac{1}{\psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right)} \psi'_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right) \cdot \left(-\frac{t}{n^2} \right)}{-\frac{1}{n^2}}, \end{aligned}$$

to get that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \ln \left(\psi_{\bar{X}_n} (t) \right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} t \cdot \frac{\psi'_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right)}{\psi_{x_1} \left(\frac{t}{n} \right)} = t \cdot \frac{\psi'_{x_1} (0)}{\psi_{x_1} (0)} = \mu t,$$

where we have used the facts in (9.3) and (9.4). It then follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \psi_{\bar{X}_n} (t) = e^{\mu t}, \quad \text{for } |t| < \delta. \quad (9.6)$$

We note that the limit in (9.6) is the mgf of a discrete random variable, Y_μ with pmf

$$p_{Y_\mu} (y) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } y = \mu; \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases} \quad (9.7)$$

Thus, by the mgf convergence theorem, the sequence of sample means, (\bar{X}_n) , converges in distribution to Y_μ , where Y_μ has the pmf given in (9.7).

Now, the cdf of the random variable Y_μ defined by the pmf in (9.7) is given by

$$F_{Y_\mu} (y) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } y < \mu; \\ 1, & \text{if } y \geq \mu, \end{cases} \quad (9.8)$$

and sketch of its graph is shown in Figure 9.2.2.

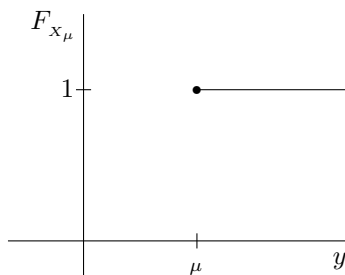
It follows from the result in Example 9.2.1 that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(\bar{X}_n \leq x) = F_{Y_\mu} (x), \quad (9.9)$$

for values of x at which the cdf of Y_μ given in (9.8) is continuous.

As a consequence of the assertion in (9.9) we obtain that, for every $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(\bar{X}_n \leq \mu + \varepsilon) = \Pr(Y_\mu \leq \mu + \varepsilon) = 1,$$

Figure 9.2.2: Cumulative Distribution Function of X_μ

while

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(\bar{X}_n \leq \mu - \varepsilon) = \Pr(X_\mu \leq \mu - \varepsilon) = 0.$$

Therefore,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(\mu - \varepsilon < \bar{X}_n \leq \mu + \varepsilon) = 1$$

for all $\varepsilon > 0$. Thus, with probability 1, the sample means, \bar{X}_n , will be within an arbitrarily small distance from the mean of the distribution as the sample size, n , increases to infinity.

This conclusion was attained through the use of the mgf Convergence Theorem, which assumes that the mgf of X_1 exists. However, the result is true more generally; for example, we only need to assume that the variance of X_1 exists. This assertion follows from the following inequality Theorem:

Theorem 9.2.2 (Chebyshev Inequality). *Let X be a random variable with mean μ and variance $\text{Var}(X)$. Then, for every $\varepsilon > 0$,*

$$\Pr(|X - \mu| \geq \varepsilon) \leq \frac{\text{Var}(X)}{\varepsilon^2}.$$

Proof: We shall prove this inequality for the case in which X is continuous with pdf f_X .

Observe that $\text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x - \mu|^2 f_X(x) dx$. Thus,

$$\text{Var}(X) \geq \int_{A_\varepsilon} |x - \mu|^2 f_X(x) dx,$$

where $A_\varepsilon = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid |x - \mu| \geq \varepsilon\}$. Consequently,

$$\text{Var}(X) \geq \varepsilon^2 \int_{A_\varepsilon} f_X(x) dx = \varepsilon^2 \Pr(A_\varepsilon).$$

we therefore get that

$$\Pr(A_\varepsilon) \leq \frac{\text{Var}(X)}{\varepsilon^2},$$

or

$$\Pr(|X - \mu| \geq \varepsilon) \leq \frac{\text{Var}(X)}{\varepsilon^2}.$$

□

Applying Chebyshev Inequality to the case in which X is the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , we get

$$\Pr(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| \geq \varepsilon) \leq \frac{\text{Var}(\bar{X}_n)}{\varepsilon^2} = \frac{\sigma^2}{n\varepsilon^2}.$$

We therefore obtain that

$$\Pr(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| < \varepsilon) \geq 1 - \frac{\sigma^2}{n\varepsilon^2}.$$

Thus, letting $n \rightarrow \infty$, we get that, for every $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| < \varepsilon) = 1.$$

We then say that \bar{X}_n **converges to μ in probability** and write

$$\bar{X}_n \xrightarrow{\text{Pr}} \mu \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

This is known as the weak **Law of Large Numbers**.

Definition 9.2.3 (Convergence in Probability). A sequence, (Y_n) , of random variables is said to converge in probability to $b \in \mathbb{R}$, if for every $\varepsilon > 0$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(|Y_n - b| < \varepsilon) = 1.$$

We write

$$Y_n \xrightarrow{\text{Pr}} b \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Theorem 9.2.4 (Slutsky's Theorem). *Suppose that (Y_n) converges in probability to b as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and that g is a function which is continuous at b . Then, $(g(Y_n))$ converges in probability to $g(b)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.*

Proof: Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. Since g is continuous at b , there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$|y - b| < \delta \Rightarrow |g(y) - g(b)| < \varepsilon.$$

It then follows that the event $A_\delta = \{y \mid |y - b| < \delta\}$ is a subset the event $B_\varepsilon = \{y \mid |g(y) - g(b)| < \varepsilon\}$. Consequently,

$$\Pr(A_\delta) \leq \Pr(B_\varepsilon).$$

It then follows that

$$\Pr(|Y_n - b| < \delta) \leq \Pr(|g(Y_n) - g(b)| < \varepsilon) \leq 1. \quad (9.10)$$

Now, since $Y_n \xrightarrow{\text{Pr}} b$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(|Y_n - b| < \delta) = 1.$$

It then follows from Equation (9.10) and the Squeeze or Sandwich Theorem that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(|g(Y_n) - g(b)| < \varepsilon) = 1.$$

□

Since the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , converges in probability to the mean, μ , of sampled distribution, by the weak Law of Large Numbers, we say that \bar{X}_n is a **consistent** estimator for μ .

9.3 Estimating Proportions

Example 9.3.1 (Estimating Proportions, Revisited). Let X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots denote independent identically distributed (iid) Bernoulli(p) random variables. Then the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , is an unbiased and consistent estimator for p . Denoting \bar{X}_n by \hat{p}_n , we then have that

$$E(\hat{p}_n) = p \quad \text{for all } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

and

$$\hat{p}_n \xrightarrow{\text{Pr}} p \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty;$$

that is, for every $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr(|\hat{p}_n - p| < \varepsilon) = 1.$$

By Slutsky's Theorem, we also have that

$$\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)} \xrightarrow{\text{Pr}} \sqrt{p(1 - p)} \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Thus, the statistic $\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}$ is a consistent estimator of the standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{p(1 - p)}$ of the Bernoulli(p) trials X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots

Now, by the Central Limit Theorem, we have that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Pr\left(\frac{\hat{p}_n - p}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \leq z\right) = \Pr(Z \leq z),$$

where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$, for all $z \in \mathbb{R}$. Hence, since $\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}$ is a consistent estimator for σ , we have that, for large values of n ,

$$\Pr\left(\frac{\hat{p}_n - p}{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}/\sqrt{n}} \leq z\right) \approx \Pr(Z \leq z),$$

for all $z \in \mathbb{R}$. Similarly, for large values of n ,

$$\Pr\left(\frac{\hat{p}_n - p}{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}/\sqrt{n}} \leq -z\right) \approx \Pr(Z \leq -z).$$

subtracting this from the previous expression we get

$$\Pr\left(-z < \frac{\hat{p}_n - p}{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}/\sqrt{n}} \leq z\right) \approx \Pr(-z < Z \leq z)$$

for large values of n , or

$$\Pr\left(-z \leq \frac{p - \hat{p}_n}{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}/\sqrt{n}} < z\right) \approx \Pr(-z < Z \leq z)$$

for large values of n .

Now, suppose that $z > 0$ is such that $\Pr(-z < Z \leq z) \geq 0.95$. Then, for that value of z , we get that, approximately, for large values of n ,

$$\Pr\left(\hat{p}_n - z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}} \leq p < \hat{p}_n + z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}\right) \geq 0.95$$

Thus, for large values of n , the intervals

$$\left[\hat{p}_n - z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}, \hat{p}_n + z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$$

have the property that the probability that the true proportion p lies in them is at least 95%. For this reason, the interval

$$\left[\hat{p}_n - z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}, \hat{p}_n + z \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$$

is called the 95% **confidence interval estimate for the proportion p** . To find the value of z that yields the 95% confidence interval for p , observe that

$$\Pr(-z < Z \leq z) = F_z(z) - F_z(-z) = F_z(z) - (1 - F_z(z)) = 2F_z(z) - 1.$$

Thus, we need to solve for z in the inequality

$$2F_z(z) - 1 \geq 0.95$$

or

$$F_z(z) \geq 0.975.$$

This yields $z = 1.96$. We then get that the **approximate 95% confidence interval estimate for the proportion p** is

$$\left[\hat{p}_n - 1.96 \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}, \hat{p}_n + 1.96 \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$$

Example 9.3.2. A random sample of 600 voters in a certain population yields 53% of the voters supporting certain candidate. Is this enough evidence to conclude that a simple majority of the voters support the candidate?

Solution: Here we have $n = 600$ and $\hat{p}_n = 0.53$. An approximate 95% confidence interval estimate for the proportion of voters, p , who support the candidate is then

$$\left[0.53 - 1.96 \frac{\sqrt{0.53(0.47)}}{\sqrt{600}}, 0.53 + 1.96 \frac{\sqrt{0.53(0.47)}}{\sqrt{600}} \right),$$

or about $[0.49, 0.57)$. Thus, there is a 95% chance that the true proportion is below 50%. Hence, the data do not provide enough evidence to support that assertion that a majority of the voters support the given candidate. \square

Example 9.3.3. Assume that, in the previous example, the sample size is 1900. What do you conclude?

Solution: In this case the approximate 95% confidence interval for p is about $[0.507, 0.553)$. Thus, in this case we are “95% confident” that the data support the conclusion that a majority of the voters support the candidate. \square

9.4 Interval Estimates for the Mean

In the previous section we obtained an approximate confidence interval (CI) estimate for p based on a random sample (X_k) from a Bernoulli(p) distribution. We did this by using the fact that, for large numbers of trials, a binomial distribution can be approximated by a normal distribution (by the Central Limit Theorem). We also used the fact that the sample standard deviation $\sqrt{\hat{p}_n(1 - \hat{p}_n)}$ is a consistent estimator of the standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{p(1 - p)}$ of the Bernoulli(p) trials X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots . The consistency condition might not hold in general. However, in the case in which sampling is done from a normal distribution an exact confidence interval estimate may be obtained based on the sample mean and variance by means of the t -distribution. We present this development here and apply it to the problem of obtaining an interval estimate for the mean, μ , of a random sample from a Normal(μ, σ^2) distribution.

We first note that the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , of a random sample of size n from a normal(μ, σ^2) follows a normal($\mu, \sigma^2/n$) distribution. To see why this is the case, we can compute the mgf of \bar{X}_n to get

$$\psi_{\bar{X}_n}(t) = e^{\mu t + \sigma^2 t^2 / 2n},$$

where we have used the assumption that X_1, X_2, \dots are iid Normal(μ, σ^2) random variables.

It then follows that

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1), \quad \text{for all } n,$$

so that

$$\Pr\left(\frac{|\bar{X}_n - \mu|}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \leq z\right) = \Pr(|Z| \leq z), \quad \text{for all } z \in \mathbb{R}, \quad (9.11)$$

where $Z \sim \text{normal}(0, 1)$.

Thus, if we knew σ , then we could obtain the 95% CI for μ by choosing $z = 1.96$ in (9.11). We would then obtain the CI:

$$\left[\bar{X}_n - 1.96 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_n + 1.96 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right].$$

However, σ is generally an unknown parameter. So, we need to resort to a different kind of estimate. The idea is to use the sample variance, S_n^2 , to estimate σ^2 , where

$$S_n^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{k=1}^n (X_k - \bar{X}_n)^2. \quad (9.12)$$

Thus, instead of considering the normalized sample means

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}},$$

we consider the random variables

$$T_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{S_n/\sqrt{n}}. \quad (9.13)$$

The task that remains then is to determine the sampling distribution of T_n . This was done by William Sealy Gosset in 1908 in an article published in the journal *Biometrika* under the pseudonym Student. The fact that we can actually determine the distribution of T_n in (9.13) depends on the fact that X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is a random sample from a normal distribution and some properties of the χ^2 distribution.

9.4.1 The χ^2 Distribution

Example 9.4.1 (The Chi-Square Distribution with one degree of freedom). Let $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$ and define $X = Z^2$. Give the probability density function (pdf) of X .

Solution: The pdf of Z is given by

$$f_x(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-z^2/2}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < z < \infty.$$

We compute the pdf for X by first determining its cumulative density function (cdf):

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \leq x) &= P(Z^2 \leq x) \quad \text{for } y \geq 0 \\ &= P(-\sqrt{x} \leq Z \leq \sqrt{x}) \\ &= P(-\sqrt{x} < Z \leq \sqrt{x}), \quad \text{since } Z \text{ is continuous.} \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \leq x) &= P(Z \leq \sqrt{x}) - P(Z \leq -\sqrt{x}) \\ &= F_Z(\sqrt{x}) - F_Z(-\sqrt{x}) \quad \text{for } x > 0, \end{aligned}$$

since X is continuous.

We then have that the cdf of X is

$$F_X(x) = F_Z(\sqrt{x}) - F_Z(-\sqrt{x}) \quad \text{for } x > 0,$$

from which we get, after differentiation with respect to x ,

$$\begin{aligned} f_X(x) &= F'_Z(\sqrt{x}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} + F'_Z(-\sqrt{x}) \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} \\ &= f_Z(\sqrt{x}) \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} + f_Z(-\sqrt{x}) \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x/2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x/2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} e^{-x/2} \end{aligned}$$

for $x > 0$. □

Definition 9.4.2. A continuous random variable, X having the pdf

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} e^{-x/2} & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

is said to have a Chi-Square distribution with one degree of freedom. We write

$$Y \sim \chi^2(1).$$

Remark 9.4.3. Observe that if $X \sim \chi^2(1)$, then its expected value is

$$E(X) = E(Z^2) = 1,$$

since $\text{var}(Z) = E(Z^2) - (E(Z))^2$, $E(Z) = 0$ and $\text{var}(Z) = 1$. To compute the second moment of X , $E(X^2) = E(Z^4)$, we need to compute the fourth moment of Z . In order to do this, we use the mgf of Z , which is

$$\psi_Z(t) = e^{t^2/2} \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Its fourth derivative can be computed to be

$$\psi_Z^{(4)}(t) = (3 + 6t^2 + t^4) e^{t^2/2} \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus,

$$E(Z^4) = \psi_Z^{(4)}(0) = 3.$$

We then have that the variance of X is

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - (E(X))^2 = E(Z^4) - 1 = 3 - 1 = 2.$$

Suppose next that we have two independent random variable, X and Y , both of which have a $\chi^2(1)$ distribution. We would like to know the distribution of the sum $X + Y$.

Denote the sum $X + Y$ by W . We would like to compute the pdf f_W . Since X and Y are independent, f_W is given by the convolution of f_X and f_Y ; namely,

$$f_W(w) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f_X(u)f_Y(w-u)du,$$

where

$$f_X(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} e^{-x/2}, & x > 0; \\ 0; & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases} \quad f_Y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} e^{-y/2}, & y > 0; \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We then have that

$$f_W(w) = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sqrt{u}} e^{-u/2} f_Y(w-u) du,$$

since $f_X(u)$ is zero for negative values of u . Similarly, since $f_Y(w-u) = 0$ for $w-u < 0$, we get that

$$\begin{aligned} f_W(w) &= \int_0^w \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sqrt{u}} e^{-u/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sqrt{w-u}} e^{-(w-u)/2} du \\ &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{2\pi} \int_0^w \frac{1}{\sqrt{u}\sqrt{w-u}} du. \end{aligned}$$

Next, make the change of variables $t = \frac{u}{w}$. Then, $du = wdt$ and

$$\begin{aligned} f_W(w) &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{2\pi} \int_0^1 \frac{w}{\sqrt{wt}\sqrt{w-wt}} dt \\ &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{2\pi} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}\sqrt{1-t}} dt. \end{aligned}$$

Making a second change of variables $s = \sqrt{t}$, we get that $t = s^2$ and $dt = 2sds$, so that

$$\begin{aligned} f_W(w) &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{\pi} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-s^2}} ds \\ &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{\pi} [\arcsin(s)]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} e^{-w/2} \quad \text{for } w > 0, \end{aligned}$$

and zero otherwise. It then follows that $W = X + Y$ has the pdf of an Exponential(2) random variable.

Definition 9.4.4 (χ^2 distribution with n degrees of freedom). Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be independent, identically distributed random variables with a $\chi^2(1)$ distribution. Then the random variable $X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n$ is said to have a χ^2 distribution with n degrees of freedom. We write

$$X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n \sim \chi^2(n).$$

By the calculations preceding Definition 9.4.4, if a random variable, W , has a $\chi^2(2)$ distribution, then its pdf is given by

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} e^{-w/2} & \text{for } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{for } w \leq 0; \end{cases}$$

Our goal in the following set of examples is to come up with the formula for the pdf of a $\chi^2(n)$ random variable.

Example 9.4.5 (Three degrees of freedom). Let $X \sim \text{Exponential}(2)$ and $Y \sim \chi^2(1)$ be independent random variables and define $W = X + Y$. Give the distribution of W .

Solution: Since X and Y are independent, by Problem 1 in Assignment #3, f_w is the convolution of f_x and f_y :

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= f_x * f_y(w) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_x(u) f_y(w-u) du, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} e^{-x/2} & \text{if } x > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

and

$$f_y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} e^{-y/2} & \text{if } y > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It then follows that, for $w > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1}{2} e^{-u/2} f_y(w-u) du \\ &= \int_0^w \frac{1}{2} e^{-u/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{w-u}} e^{-(w-u)/2} du \\ &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{2\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^w \frac{1}{\sqrt{w-u}} du. \end{aligned}$$

Making the change of variables $t = u/w$, we get that $u = wt$ and $du = wdt$, so that

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{2\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{w-wt}} wdt \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{w} e^{-w/2}}{2\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-t}} dt \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{w} e^{-w/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} [-\sqrt{1-t}]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{w} e^{-w/2}, \end{aligned}$$

for $w > 0$. It then follows that

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{w} e^{-w/2} & \text{if } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

This is the pdf for a $\chi^2(3)$ random variable. \square

Example 9.4.6 (Four degrees of freedom). Let $X, Y \sim \text{exponential}(2)$ be independent random variables and define $W = X + Y$. Give the distribution of W .

Solution: Since X and Y are independent, f_w is the convolution of f_x and f_y :

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= f_x * f_y(w) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_x(u) f_y(w-u) du, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} e^{-x/2} & \text{if } x > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

and

$$f_y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} e^{-y/2} & \text{if } y > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It then follows that, for $w > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_w(w) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{1}{2} e^{-u/2} f_Y(w-u) du \\
 &= \int_0^w \frac{1}{2} e^{-u/2} \frac{1}{2} e^{-(w-u)/2} du \\
 &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{4} \int_0^w du \\
 &= \frac{w e^{-w/2}}{4},
 \end{aligned}$$

for $w > 0$. It then follows that

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4} w e^{-w/2} & \text{if } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

This is the pdf for a $\chi^2(4)$ random variable. \square

We are now ready to derive the general formula for the pdf of a $\chi^2(n)$ random variable.

Example 9.4.7 (n degrees of freedom). In this example we prove that if $W \sim \chi^2(n)$, then the pdf of W is given by

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\Gamma(n/2) 2^{n/2}} w^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-w/2} & \text{if } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (9.14)$$

where Γ denotes the Gamma function defined by

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^\infty t^{z-1} e^{-t} dt \quad \text{for all real values of } z \text{ except } 0, -1, -2, -3, \dots$$

Proof: We proceed by induction of n . Observe that when $n = 1$ the formula in (9.14) yields, for $w > 0$,

$$f_w(w) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(1/2) 2^{1/2}} w^{\frac{1}{2}-1} e^{-w/2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} e^{-w/2},$$

which is the pdf for a $\chi^2(1)$ random variable. Thus, the formula in (9.14) holds true for $n = 1$.

Next, assume that a $\chi^2(n)$ random variable has pdf given (9.14). We will show that if $W \sim \chi^2(n+1)$, then its pdf is given by

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\Gamma((n+1)/2) 2^{(n+1)/2}} w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2} & \text{if } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (9.15)$$

By the definition of a $\chi^2(n+1)$ random variable, we have that $W = X + Y$ where $X \sim \chi^2(n)$ and $Y \sim \chi^2(1)$ are independent random variables. It then follows that

$$f_w = f_x * f_y$$

where

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\Gamma(n/2) 2^{n/2}} x^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-x/2} & \text{if } x > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

and

$$f_y(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} e^{-y/2} & \text{if } y > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Consequently, for $w > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= \int_0^w \frac{1}{\Gamma(n/2) 2^{n/2}} u^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-u/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{w-u}} e^{-(w-u)/2} du \\ &= \frac{e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{\pi} 2^{(n+1)/2}} \int_0^w \frac{u^{\frac{n}{2}-1}}{\sqrt{w-u}} du. \end{aligned}$$

Next, make the change of variables $t = u/w$; we then have that $u = wt$, $du = wdt$ and

$$f_w(w) = \frac{w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{\pi} 2^{(n+1)/2}} \int_0^1 \frac{t^{\frac{n}{2}-1}}{\sqrt{1-t}} dt.$$

Making a further change of variables $t = z^2$, so that $dt = 2zdz$, we obtain that

$$f_w(w) = \frac{2w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{\pi} 2^{(n+1)/2}} \int_0^1 \frac{z^{n-1}}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} dz. \quad (9.16)$$

It remains to evaluate the integrals

$$\int_0^1 \frac{z^{n-1}}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} dz \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

We can evaluate these by making the trigonometric substitution $z = \sin \theta$ so that $dz = \cos \theta d\theta$ and

$$\int_0^1 \frac{z^{n-1}}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} dz = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-1} \theta d\theta.$$

Looking up the last integral in a table of integrals we find that, if n is even and $n \geq 4$, then

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-1} \theta d\theta = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (n-2)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdots (n-1)},$$

which can be written in terms of the Gamma function as

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-1} \theta d\theta = \frac{2^{n-2} [\Gamma(\frac{n}{2})]^2}{\Gamma(n)}. \quad (9.17)$$

Note that this formula also works for $n = 2$.

Similarly, we obtain that for odd n with $n \geq 1$ that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-1} \theta d\theta = \frac{\Gamma(n)}{2^{n-1} [\Gamma(\frac{n+1}{2})]^2} \frac{\pi}{2}. \quad (9.18)$$

Now, if n is odd and $n \geq 1$ we may substitute (9.18) into (9.16) to get

$$\begin{aligned} f_w(w) &= \frac{2w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{\pi} 2^{(n+1)/2}} \frac{\Gamma(n)}{2^{n-1} [\Gamma(\frac{n+1}{2})]^2} \frac{\pi}{2} \\ &= \frac{w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2) 2^{(n+1)/2}} \frac{\Gamma(n)\sqrt{\pi}}{2^{n-1} [\Gamma(\frac{n+1}{2})]^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, by Problem 5 in Assignment 1, for odd n ,

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) = \frac{\Gamma(n)\sqrt{\pi}}{2^{n-1} \Gamma(\frac{n+1}{2})}.$$

It follows that

$$f_w(w) = \frac{w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(\frac{n+1}{2}) 2^{(n+1)/2}}$$

for $w > 0$, which is (9.15) for odd n .

Next, suppose that n is a positive, even integer. In this case we substitute (9.17) into (9.16) and get

$$f_w(w) = \frac{2w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{\pi} 2^{(n+1)/2}} \frac{2^{n-2} [\Gamma(\frac{n}{2})]^2}{\Gamma(n)}$$

or

$$f_w(w) = \frac{w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{2^{(n+1)/2}} \frac{2^{n-1} \Gamma(\frac{n}{2})}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(n)} \quad (9.19)$$

Now, since n is even, $n + 1$ is odd, so that by Problem 5 in Assignment 1 again, we get that

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right) = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)\sqrt{\pi}}{2^n \Gamma\left(\frac{n+2}{2}\right)} = \frac{n\Gamma(n)\sqrt{\pi}}{2^n \frac{n}{2}\Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)},$$

from which we get that

$$\frac{2^{n-1}\Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(n)} = \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)}.$$

Substituting this into (9.19) yields

$$f_w(w) = \frac{w^{\frac{n-1}{2}} e^{-w/2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right) 2^{(n+1)/2}}$$

for $w > 0$, which is (9.15) for even n . This completes inductive step and the proof is now complete. That is, if $W \sim \chi^2(n)$ then the pdf of W is given by

$$f_w(w) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\Gamma(n/2) 2^{n/2}} w^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-w/2} & \text{if } w > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ □

9.4.2 The t Distribution

In this section we derive a very important distribution in statistics, the Student t distribution, or t distribution for short. We will see that this distribution will come in handy when we complete our discussion interval estimates for the mean based on a random sample from a Normal(μ, σ^2) distribution.

Example 9.4.8 (The t distribution). Let $Z \sim \text{normal}(0, 1)$ and $X \sim \chi^2(n-1)$ be independent random variables. Define

$$T = \frac{Z}{\sqrt{X/(n-1)}}.$$

Give the pdf of the random variable T .

Solution: We first compute the cdf, F_T , of T ; namely,

$$\begin{aligned} F_T(t) &= \Pr(T \leq t) \\ &= \Pr\left(\frac{Z}{\sqrt{X/(n-1)}} \leq t\right) \\ &= \iint_R f_{(x,z)}(x, z) dx dz, \end{aligned}$$

where R_t is the region in the xz -plane given by

$$R_t = \{(x, z) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid z < t\sqrt{x/(n-1)}, x > 0\},$$

and the joint distribution, $f_{(x,z)}$, of X and Z is given by

$$f_{(x,z)}(x, z) = f_x(x) \cdot f_z(z) \quad \text{for } x > 0 \text{ and } z \in \mathbb{R},$$

because X and Z are assumed to be independent. Furthermore,

$$f_x(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) 2^{(n-1)/2}} x^{\frac{n-1}{2}-1} e^{-x/2} & \text{if } x > 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

and

$$f_z(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-z^2/2}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < z < \infty.$$

We then have that

$$F_T(t) = \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^{t\sqrt{x/(n-1)}} \frac{x^{\frac{n-3}{2}} e^{-(x+z^2)/2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{\pi} 2^{\frac{n}{2}}} dz dx.$$

Next, make the change of variables

$$\begin{aligned} u &= x \\ v &= \frac{z}{\sqrt{x/(n-1)}}, \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} x &= u \\ z &= v\sqrt{u/(n-1)}. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently,

$$F_T(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{\pi} 2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^t \int_0^\infty u^{\frac{n-3}{2}} e^{-(u+uv^2/(n-1))/2} \left| \frac{\partial(x, z)}{\partial(u, v)} \right| du dv,$$

where the Jacobian of the change of variables is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(x, z)}{\partial(u, v)} &= \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v/2\sqrt{u}\sqrt{n-1} & u^{1/2}/\sqrt{n-1} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{u^{1/2}}{\sqrt{n-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

It then follows that

$$F_T(t) = \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^t \int_0^{\infty} u^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-(u+uv^2/(n-1))/2} du dv.$$

Next, differentiate with respect to t and apply the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus to get

$$\begin{aligned} f_T(t) &= \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \int_0^{\infty} u^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-(u+ut^2/(n-1))/2} du \\ &= \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \int_0^{\infty} u^{\frac{n}{2}-1} e^{-\left(1+\frac{t^2}{n-1}\right)u/2} du. \end{aligned}$$

Put $\alpha = \frac{n}{2}$ and $\beta = \frac{2}{1+\frac{t^2}{n-1}}$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} f_T(t) &= \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^\alpha} \int_0^{\infty} u^{\alpha-1} e^{-u/\beta} du \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)\beta^\alpha}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^\alpha} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{u^{\alpha-1} e^{-u/\beta}}{\Gamma(\alpha)\beta^\alpha} du, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$f_U(u) = \begin{cases} \frac{u^{\alpha-1} e^{-u/\beta}}{\Gamma(\alpha)\beta^\alpha} & \text{if } u > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } u \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

is the pdf of a $\Gamma(\alpha, \beta)$ random variable (see Problem 5 in Assignment #22). We then have that

$$f_T(t) = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)\beta^\alpha}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi} 2^\alpha} \quad \text{for } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Using the definitions of α and β we obtain that

$$f_T(t) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right) \sqrt{(n-1)\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{t^2}{n-1}\right)^{n/2}} \quad \text{for } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

This is the pdf of a random variable with a t distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom. In general, a random variable, T , is said to have a t distribution with r degrees of freedom, for $r \geq 1$, if its pdf is given by

$$f_T(t) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{r+1}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{r}{2}\right) \sqrt{r\pi}} \cdot \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{t^2}{r}\right)^{(r+1)/2}} \quad \text{for } t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We write $T \sim t(r)$. Thus, in this example we have seen that, if $Z \sim \text{norma}(0, 1)$ and $X \sim \chi^2(n-1)$, then

$$\frac{Z}{\sqrt{X/(n-1)}} \sim t(n-1).$$

□

We will see the relevance of this example in the next section when we continue our discussion estimating the mean of a normal distribution.

9.4.3 Sampling from a normal distribution

Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be a random sample from a normal(μ, σ^2) distribution. Then, the sample mean, \bar{X}_n has a normal($\mu, \sigma^2/n$) distribution.

Observe that

$$|\bar{X}_n - \mu| < b \Leftrightarrow \left| \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \right| < \frac{\sqrt{n} b}{\sigma},$$

where

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1).$$

Thus,

$$\Pr(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| < b) = \Pr\left(|Z| < \frac{\sqrt{n} b}{\sigma}\right), \quad (9.20)$$

where $Z \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. Observe that the distribution of the standard normal random variable Z is independent of the parameters μ and σ . Thus, for given values of $z > 0$ we can compute $P(|Z| < z)$. For example, if there is a way of knowing the cdf for Z , either by looking up values in probability tables or using statistical software packages to compute them, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(|Z| < z) &= \Pr(-z < Z < z) \\ &= \Pr(-z < Z \leq z) \\ &= \Pr(Z \leq z) - \Pr(Z \leq -z) \\ &= F_z(z) - F_z(-z), \end{aligned}$$

where $F_z(-z) = 1 - F_z(z)$, by the symmetry of the pdf of Z . Consequently,

$$\Pr(|Z| < z) = 2F_z(z) - 1 \quad \text{for } z > 0.$$

Suppose that $0 < \alpha < 1$ and let $z_{\alpha/2}$ be the value of z for which $\Pr(|Z| < z) = 1 - \alpha$. We then have that $z_{\alpha/2}$ satisfies the equation

$$F_z(z) = 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

Thus,

$$z_{\alpha/2} = F_Z^{-1}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \quad (9.21)$$

where F_Z^{-1} denotes the inverse of the cdf of Z . Then, setting

$$\frac{\sqrt{n} b}{\sigma} = z_{\alpha/2},$$

we see from (9.20) that

$$\Pr\left(|\bar{X}_n - \mu| < z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha,$$

which we can write as

$$\Pr\left(|\mu - \bar{X}_n| < z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha,$$

or

$$\Pr\left(\bar{X}_n - z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} < \mu < \bar{X}_n + z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha, \quad (9.22)$$

which says that the probability that the interval

$$\left(\bar{X}_n - z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_n + z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right) \quad (9.23)$$

captures the parameter μ is $1 - \alpha$. The interval in (9.23) is called the $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the mean, μ , based on the sample mean. Notice that this interval assumes that the variance, σ^2 , is known, which is not the case in general. So, in practice it is not very useful (we will see later how to remedy this situation); however, it is a good example to illustrate the concept of a confidence interval.

For a more concrete example, let $\alpha = 0.05$. Then, to find $z_{\alpha/2}$ we may use the NORMINV function in MS Excel, which gives the inverse of the cumulative distribution function of normal random variable. The format for this function is

NORMINV(probability, mean, standard_dev)

In this case the probability is $1 - \frac{\alpha}{2} = 0.975$, the mean is 0, and the standard deviation is 1. Thus, according to (9.21), $z_{\alpha/2}$ is given by

$$\text{NORMINV}(0.975, 0, 1) \approx 1.959963985$$

or about 1.96.

You may also use WolframAlpha™ to compute the inverse cdf for the standard normal distribution. The inverse cdf for a Normal(0, 1) in WolframAlpha™ is given

`InverseCDF[NormalDistribution[0,1], probability]`.

For $\alpha = 0.05$,

$$z_{\alpha/2} \approx \text{InverseCDF}[\text{NormalDistribution}[0, 1], 0.975] \approx 1.95996 \approx 1.96.$$

Thus, the 95% confidence interval for the mean, μ , of a normal(μ, σ^2) distribution based on the sample mean, \bar{X}_n is

$$\left(\bar{X}_n - 1.96 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_n + 1.96 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \right), \quad (9.24)$$

provided that the variance, σ^2 , of the distribution is known. Unfortunately, in most situations, σ^2 is an unknown parameter, so the formula for the confidence interval in (9.23) is not useful at all. In order to remedy this situation, in 1908, William Sealy Gosset, writing under the pseudonym of A. Student (*Biometrika*, 6(1):1-25, March 1908), proposed looking at the statistic

$$T_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{S_n / \sqrt{n}},$$

where S_n^2 is the sample variance defined by

$$S_n^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2.$$

Thus, we are replacing σ in

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma / \sqrt{n}}$$

by the sample standard deviation, S_n , so that we only have one unknown parameter, μ , in the definition of T_n .

In order to find the sampling distribution of T_n , we will first need to determine the distribution of S_n^2 , given that sampling is done from a normal(μ, σ^2) distribution. We will find the distribution of S_n^2 by first finding the distribution of the statistic

$$W_n = \frac{1}{\sigma^2} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2. \quad (9.25)$$

Observe that

$$W_n = \frac{n}{\sigma^2} \hat{\sigma}_n^2,$$

where $\hat{\sigma}_n^2$ is the maximum likelihood estimator for σ^2 .

Starting with

$$(X_i - \mu)^2 = [(X_i - \bar{X}_n) + (\bar{X}_n - \mu)]^2,$$

we can derive the identity

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \mu)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2 + n(\bar{X}_n - \mu)^2, \quad (9.26)$$

where we have used the fact that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n) = 0. \quad (9.27)$$

Next, dividing the equation in (9.26) by σ^2 and rearranging we obtain that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \left(\frac{X_i - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 = W_n + \left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \right)^2, \quad (9.28)$$

where we have used the definition of the random variable W_n in (9.25). Observe that the random variable

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \left(\frac{X_i - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2$$

has a $\chi^2(n)$ distribution since the X_i s are iid Normal(μ, σ^2) so that

$$\frac{X_i - \mu}{\sigma} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1), \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n,$$

and, consequently,

$$\left(\frac{X_i - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \sim \chi^2(1), \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n.$$

Similarly,

$$\left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \right)^2 \sim \chi^2(1),$$

since $\bar{X}_n \sim \text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2/n)$. We can then re-write (9.28) as

$$Y = W_n + X, \quad (9.29)$$

where $Y \sim \chi^2(n)$ and $X \sim \chi^2(1)$. If we can prove that W_n and X are independent random variables (this assertion will be proved in the next section), we will then be able to conclude that

$$W_n \sim \chi^2(n-1). \quad (9.30)$$

To see why the assertion in (9.30) is true, if W_n and X are independent, note that from (9.29) we get that the mgf of Y is

$$\psi_Y(t) = \psi_{W_n}(t) \cdot \psi_X(t),$$

by independence of W_n and X . Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{W_n}(t) &= \frac{\psi_Y(t)}{\psi_X(t)} \\ &= \frac{\left(\frac{1}{1-2t}\right)^{n/2}}{\left(\frac{1}{1-2t}\right)^{1/2}} \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{1-2t}\right)^{(n-1)/2},\end{aligned}$$

which is the mgf for a $\chi^2(n-1)$ random variable. Thus, in order to prove (9.30), it remains to prove that W_n and $\left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}\right)^2$ are independent random variables.

9.4.4 Distribution of the Sample Variance from a Normal Distribution

In this section we will establish (9.30), which we now write as

$$\frac{(n-1)}{\sigma^2} S_n^2 \sim \chi^2(n-1). \quad (9.31)$$

As pointed out in the previous section, (9.31) will follow from (9.29) if we can prove that

$$\frac{1}{\sigma^2} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2 \text{ and } \left(\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}\right)^2 \text{ are independent.} \quad (9.32)$$

In turn, the claim in (9.32) will follow from the claim

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2 \text{ and } \bar{X}_n \text{ are independent.} \quad (9.33)$$

The justification for the last assertion is given in the following two examples.

Example 9.4.9. Suppose that X and Y are independent independent random variables. Show that X and Y^2 are also independent.

Solution: Compute, for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $u \geq 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr(X \leq x, Y^2 \leq u) &= \Pr(X \leq x, |Y| \leq \sqrt{u}) \\ &= \Pr(X \leq x, -\sqrt{u} \leq Y \leq \sqrt{u}) \\ &= \Pr(X \leq x) \cdot \Pr(-\sqrt{u} \leq Y \leq \sqrt{u}),\end{aligned}$$

since X and Y are assumed to be independent. Consequently,

$$\Pr(X \leq x, Y^2 \leq u) = \Pr(X \leq x) \cdot \Pr(Y^2 \leq u),$$

which shows that X and Y^2 are independent. \square

Example 9.4.10. Let a and b be real numbers with $a \neq 0$. Suppose that X and Y are independent random variables. Show that X and $aY + b$ are also independent.

Solution: Compute, for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $w \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(X \leq x, aY + b \leq w) &= \Pr\left(X \leq x, Y \leq \frac{w-b}{a}\right) \\ &= \Pr(X \leq x) \cdot \Pr\left(Y \leq \frac{w-b}{a}\right), \end{aligned}$$

since X and Y are assumed to be independent. Consequently,

$$\Pr(X \leq x, aY + b \leq w) = \Pr(X \leq x) \cdot \Pr(aY + b \leq w),$$

which shows that X and $aY + b$ are independent. \square

Hence, in order to prove (9.31) it suffices to show that the claim in (9.33) is true. To prove this last claim, observe that from (9.27) we get

$$X_1 - \bar{X}_n = -\sum_{i=2}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n),$$

so that, squaring on both sides,

$$(X_1 - \bar{X}_n)^2 = \left(\sum_{i=2}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)\right)^2.$$

Hence, the random variable

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2 = \left(\sum_{i=2}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)\right)^2 + \sum_{i=2}^n (X_i - \bar{X}_n)^2$$

is a function of the random vector

$$(X_2 - \bar{X}_n, X_3 - \bar{X}_n, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n).$$

Consequently, the claim in (9.33) will be proved if we can prove that

$$\bar{X}_n \text{ and } (X_2 - \bar{X}_n, X_3 - \bar{X}_n, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n) \text{ are independent.} \quad (9.34)$$

The proof of the claim in (9.34) relies on the assumption that the random variables X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are iid normal random variables. We illustrate this

in the following example for the special case in which $n = 2$ and $X_1, X_2 \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1)$. Observe that, in view of Example 9.4.10, by considering

$$\frac{X_i - \mu}{\sigma} \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n,$$

we may assume from the outset that X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are iid $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ random variables.

Example 9.4.11. Let X_1 and X_2 denote independent $\text{Normal}(0, 1)$ random variables. Define

$$U = \frac{X_1 + X_2}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad V = \frac{X_2 - X_1}{2}.$$

Show that U and V independent random variables.

Solution: Compute the cdf of U and V :

$$\begin{aligned} F_{(U,V)}(u, v) &= \Pr(U \leq u, V \leq v) \\ &= \Pr\left(\frac{X_1 + X_2}{2} \leq u, \frac{X_2 - X_1}{2} \leq v\right) \\ &= \Pr(X_1 + X_2 \leq 2u, X_2 - X_1 \leq 2v) \\ &= \iint_{R_{u,v}} f_{(X_1, X_2)}(x_1, x_2) dx_1 dx_2, \end{aligned}$$

where $R_{u,v}$ is the region in \mathbb{R}^2 defined by

$$R_{u,v} = \{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid x_1 + x_2 \leq 2u, x_2 - x_1 \leq 2v\},$$

and $f_{(X_1, X_2)}$ is the joint pdf of X_1 and X_2 :

$$f_{(X_1, X_2)}(x_1, x_2) = \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-(x_1^2 + x_2^2)/2} \quad \text{for all } (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2,$$

where we have used the assumption that X_1 and X_2 are independent normal(0, 1) random variables.

Next, make the change of variables

$$r = x_1 + x_2 \quad \text{and} \quad w = x_2 - x_1,$$

so that

$$x_1 = \frac{r - w}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad x_2 = \frac{r + w}{2},$$

and therefore

$$x_1^2 + x_2^2 = \frac{1}{2}(r^2 + w^2).$$

Thus, by the change of variables formula,

$$F_{(U,V)}(u, v) = \int_{-\infty}^{2u} \int_{-\infty}^{2v} \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-(r^2+w^2)/4} \left| \frac{\partial(x_1, x_2)}{\partial(r, w)} \right| dw dr,$$

where

$$\frac{\partial(x_1, x_2)}{\partial(r, w)} = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Thus,

$$F_{(U,V)}(u, v) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{2u} \int_{-\infty}^{2v} e^{-r^2/4} \cdot e^{-w^2/4} dw dr,$$

which we can write as

$$F_{(U,V)}(u, v) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{2u} e^{-r^2/4} dr \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{2v} e^{-w^2/4} dw.$$

Taking partial derivatives with respect to u and v yields

$$f_{(U,V)}(u, v) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-u^2} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-v^2},$$

where we have used the fundamental theorem of calculus and the chain rule.

Thus, the joint pdf of U and V is the product of the two marginal pdfs

$$f_U(u) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-u^2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < u < \infty,$$

and

$$f_V(v) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-v^2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < v < \infty.$$

Hence, U and V are independent random variables. \square

To prove in general that if X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is a random sample from a Normal(0, 1) distribution, then

$$\bar{X}_n \quad \text{and} \quad (X_2 - \bar{X}_n, X_3 - \bar{X}_n, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n) \quad \text{are independent,}$$

we may proceed as follows. Denote the random vector

$$(X_2 - \bar{X}_n, X_3 - \bar{X}_n, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n)$$

by Y , and compute the cdf of \bar{X}_n and Y :

$$\begin{aligned} F_{(\bar{X}_n, Y)}(u, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_n) &= \Pr(\bar{X}_n \leq u, X_2 - \bar{X}_n \leq v_2, X_3 - \bar{X}_n \leq v_3, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n \leq v_n) \\ &= \iiint \cdots \int_{R_{u, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_n}} f_{(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) dx_1 dx_2 \cdots dx_n, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$R_{u,v_2,\dots,v_n} = \{(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \bar{x} \leq u, x_2 - \bar{x} \leq v_2, \dots, x_n - \bar{x} \leq v_n\},$$

for $\bar{x} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n}{n}$, and the joint pdf of X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is

$$f_{(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} e^{-(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2)/2} \quad \text{for all } (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

since X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n are iid normal(0, 1).

Next, make the change of variables

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= \bar{x} \\ y_2 &= x_2 - \bar{x} \\ y_3 &= x_3 - \bar{x} \\ &\vdots \\ y_n &= x_n - \bar{x}. \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= y_1 - \sum_{i=2}^n y_i \\ x_2 &= y_1 + y_2 \\ x_3 &= y_1 + y_3 \\ &\vdots \\ x_n &= y_1 + y_n, \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 &= \left(y_1 - \sum_{i=2}^n y_i \right)^2 + \sum_{i=2}^n (y_1 + y_i)^2 \\ &= ny_1^2 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n y_i \right)^2 + \sum_{i=2}^n y_i^2 \\ &= ny_1^2 + C(y_2, y_3, \dots, y_n), \end{aligned}$$

where we have set

$$C(y_2, y_3, \dots, y_n) = \left(\sum_{i=2}^n y_i \right)^2 + \sum_{i=2}^n y_i^2.$$

Thus, by the change of variables formula,

$$\begin{aligned} F_{(\bar{x}_n, \gamma)}(u, v_2, \dots, v_n) &= \int_{-\infty}^u \int_{-\infty}^{v_1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{v_n} \frac{e^{-(ny_1^2 + C(y_2, \dots, y_n))/2}}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \left| \frac{\partial(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}{\partial(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)} \right| dy_n \cdots dy_1, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\frac{\partial(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}{\partial(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)} = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 & \cdots & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

In order to compute this determinant observe that

$$\begin{aligned} ny_1 &= x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_n \\ ny_2 &= -x_1 + (n-1)x_2 - x_3 - \cdots - x_n \\ ny_3 &= -x_1 - x_2 + (n-1)x_3 - \cdots - x_n \\ &\vdots \\ ny_n &= -x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - \cdots + (n-1)x_n \end{aligned}$$

which can be written in matrix form as

$$n \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix},$$

where A is the $n \times n$ matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ -1 & (n-1) & -1 & \cdots & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & (n-1) & \cdots & -1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ -1 & -1 & -1 & \cdots & (n-1) \end{pmatrix},$$

whose determinant is

$$\det A = \det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ 0 & n & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & n & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & n \end{pmatrix} = n^{n-1}.$$

Thus, since

$$A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = nA^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix},$$

it follows that

$$\frac{\partial(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}{\partial(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)} = \det(nA^{-1}) = n^n \cdot \frac{1}{n^{n-1}} = n.$$

Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} F_{(\bar{X}_n, Y)}(u, v_2, \dots, v_n) &= \int_{-\infty}^u \int_{-\infty}^{v_1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{v_n} \frac{n e^{-ny_1^2/2} e^{-C(y_2, \dots, y_n)/2}}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} dy_n \cdots dy_1, \end{aligned}$$

which can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} F_{(\bar{X}_n, Y)}(u, v_2, \dots, v_n) &= \int_{-\infty}^u \frac{n e^{-ny_1^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dy_1 \cdot \int_{-\infty}^{v_1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{v_n} \frac{e^{-C(y_2, \dots, y_n)/2}}{(2\pi)^{(n-1)/2}} dy_n \cdots dy_2. \end{aligned}$$

Observe that

$$\int_{-\infty}^u \frac{n e^{-ny_1^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dy_1$$

is the cdf of a normal(0, 1/n) random variable, which is the distribution of \bar{X}_n . Therefore

$$F_{(\bar{X}_n, Y)}(u, v_2, \dots, v_n) = F_{\bar{X}_n}(u) \cdot \int_{-\infty}^{v_1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{v_n} \frac{e^{-C(y_2, \dots, y_n)/2}}{(2\pi)^{(n-1)/2}} dy_n \cdots dy_2,$$

which shows that \bar{X}_n and the random vector

$$Y = (X_2 - \bar{X}_n, X_3 - \bar{X}_n, \dots, X_n - \bar{X}_n)$$

are independent. Hence we have established (9.31); that is,

$$\frac{(n-1)}{\sigma^2} S_n^2 \sim \chi^2(n-1),$$

where S_n^2 is the sample variance of a random sample of size n from a Normal(μ, σ^2) distribution.

9.4.5 The Distribution of T_n

We are now in a position to determine the sampling distribution of the statistic

$$T_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{S_n/\sqrt{n}}, \quad (9.35)$$

where \bar{X}_n and S_n^2 are the sample mean and variance, respectively, based on a random sample of size n taken from a $\text{Normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ distribution.

We begin by re-writing the expression for T_n in (9.35) as

$$T_n = \frac{\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}}{\frac{S_n}{\sigma}}, \quad (9.36)$$

and observing that

$$Z_n = \frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \sim \text{Normal}(0, 1).$$

Furthermore,

$$\frac{S_n}{\sigma} = \sqrt{\frac{S_n^2}{\sigma^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{V_n}{n-1}},$$

where

$$V_n = \frac{n-1}{\sigma^2} S_n^2,$$

which has a $\chi^2(n-1)$ distribution, according to (9.31). It then follows from (9.36) that

$$T_n = \frac{Z_n}{\sqrt{\frac{V_n}{n-1}}},$$

where Z_n is a standard normal random variable, and V_n has a χ^2 distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom. Furthermore, by (9.32), Z_n and V_n are independent. Consequently, using the result in Example 9.4.8, the statistic T_n defined in (9.35) has a t distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom; that is,

$$\frac{\bar{X}_n - \mu}{S_n/\sqrt{n}} \sim t(n-1). \quad (9.37)$$

Notice that the distribution on the right-hand side of (9.37) is independent of the parameters μ and σ^2 ; we can therefore obtain a confidence interval for the mean of a $\text{normal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ distribution based on the sample mean and variance calculated from a random sample of size n by determining a value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that

$$\Pr(|T_n| < t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha.$$

We then have that

$$\Pr\left(\frac{|\bar{X}_n - \mu|}{S_n/\sqrt{n}} < t_{\alpha/2}\right) = 1 - \alpha,$$

or

$$\Pr\left(|\mu - \bar{X}_n| < t_{\alpha/2} \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha,$$

or

$$\Pr\left(\bar{X}_n - t_{\alpha/2} \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}} < \mu < \bar{X}_n + t_{\alpha/2} \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}}\right) = 1 - \alpha.$$

We have therefore obtained a $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the mean of a normal (μ, σ^2) distribution based on the sample mean and variance of a random sample of size n from that distribution; namely,

$$\left(\bar{X}_n - t_{\alpha/2} \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_n + t_{\alpha/2} \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}}\right). \quad (9.38)$$

To find the value for $z_{\alpha/2}$ in (9.38) we use the fact that the pdf for the t distribution is symmetric about the vertical line at 0 (or even) to obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr(|T_n| < t) &= \Pr(-t < T_n < t) \\ &= \Pr(-t < T_n \leq t) \\ &= \Pr(T_n \leq t) - \Pr(T_n \leq -t) \\ &= F_{T_n}(t) - F_{T_n}(-t), \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the fact that T_n is a continuous random variable. Now, by the symmetry if the pdf of T_n $F_{T_n}(-t) = 1 - F_{T_n}(t)$. Thus,

$$\Pr(|T_n| < t) = 2F_{T_n}(t) - 1 \quad \text{for } t > 0.$$

So, to find $t_{\alpha/2}$ we need to solve

$$F_{T_n}(t) = 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

We therefore get that

$$t_{\alpha/2} = F_{T_n}^{-1}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \quad (9.39)$$

where $F_{T_n}^{-1}$ denotes the inverse of the cdf of T_n .

Example 9.4.12. Give a 95% confidence interval for the mean of a normal distribution based on the sample mean and variance computed from a sample of size $n = 20$.

Solution: In this case, $\alpha = 0.05$ and $T_n \sim t(19)$.

To find $t_{\alpha/2}$ we may use the TINV function in MS Excel, which gives the inverse of the two-tailed cumulative distribution function of random variable with a t distribution. That is, the inverse of the function

$$\Pr(|T_n| > t) \quad \text{for } t > 0.$$

The format for this function is

`TINV(probability,degrees_freedom)`

In this case the probability of the two tails is $\alpha = 0.05$ and the number of degrees of freedom is 19. Thus, according to (9.39), $t_{\alpha/2}$ is given by

$$\text{TINV}(0.05, 19) \approx 2.09,$$

where we have used 0.05 because `TINV` in MS Excel gives two-tailed probability distribution values.

We can also use `WolframAlpha™` to obtain $t_{\alpha/2}$. In `WolframAlpha™`, the inverse cdf for a random variable with a t distribution is given by the function `qt` whose format is

`InverseCDF[tDistribution[df],probability]`.

Thus, `WolframAlpha™`, we obtain for $\alpha = 0.05$ and 19 degrees of freedom,

$$t_{\alpha/2} \approx \text{InverseCDF}[\text{tDistribution}[19], 0.975] \approx 2.09.$$

Hence the 95% confidence interval for the mean, μ , of a normal(μ, σ^2) distribution based on the sample mean, \bar{X}_n , and the sample variance, S_n^2 , is

$$\left(\bar{X}_n - 2.09 \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_n + 2.09 \frac{S_n}{\sqrt{n}} \right), \quad (9.40)$$

where $n = 20$. □